

IN THE HON'BLE NATIONAL GREEN TRIBUNAL (NGT)
SOUTHERN ZONE, CHENNAI

IN

ORIGINAL APPLICATION No. 233 of 2025

IN THE MATTER OF:

MARGANI BHARAT RAM

..... APPLICANT

VERSUS

UNION OF INDIA & ORS.

..... RESPONDENT(S)

INDEX

S. No.	PARTICULARS	PAGE No.
1	Reply Affidavit on behalf of Respondent No. 1, Ministry of Environment Forest and Climate Change (MoEF&CC)	1-6
2	Annexure No. R-1/1; Copy of the Notification S.O. 1886 (E) dated 20.04.2022	7-9
3	Annexure No. R-1/2; Copy of the Notification S.O. 637 (E) dated 28.02.2014	10-11
4	Annexure No. R-1/3; Copy of the "Enforcement & Monitoring Guidelines for Sand Mining" (EMGSM-2020).	12-9A
5	Annexure No. R-1/4; Copy of the Sustainable Sand Management Guidelines 2016 (SSMG-2016).	95-195
6	Annexure No. R-1/5; Copy of Ministry's notification dated 28.03.2020	196-202
7	Annexure No. R-1/6; Copy of Ministry's notification dated 30.08.2023	203-20A
8	Annexure No. R-1/7; Copy of Ministry's O.M dated 12.07.2023	205-270
9	Annexure No. R-1/8; Copy of Ministry's O.M dated 21.08.2023	271-272

Place: Vijayawada
Dated: 23rd March, 2026

K. Narayana 23/3/26
Respondent No. 1
Through

(Advocate for the Respondent No. 1)

IN THE HON'BLE NATIONAL GREEN TRIBUNAL (NGT)
SOUTHERN ZONE, CHENNAI
IN
ORIGINAL APPLICATION No. 233 of 2025

IN THE MATTER OF:

MARGANI BHARAT RAM

.....APPLICANT

VERSUS

UNION OF INDIA & ORS.

.....RESPONDENT(S)

REPLY AFFIDAVIT ON BEHALF OF RESPONDENT No. 1 i.e., (MINISTRY OF ENVIRONMENT FOREST & CLIMATE CHANGE).

I, Dr. Murali Krishna Chimata, S/o/ Chimata Srinivasulu (Late) aged about 44 Years and currently working as Scientist- "E" in the Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (MoEF&CC), Sub-Regional Office, Vijayawada do hereby solemnly affirm and state as under:-

1. That I, in my official capacity of Scientist-"E" in the Ministry Environment, Forest and Climate Change at Sub-Regional Office, Vijayawada i.e., Respondent No. 1 in the above-mentioned matter, am conversant with the facts and circumstances of the case on the basis of official records, and as such authorized and competent to swear this affidavit.
2. That, it is most respectfully submitted that a short affidavit is being filed by the answering respondent at this stage and craves leave and liberty to file a detailed Affidavit to the aforesaid application, as and when required.
3. That it is most respectfully submitted that the present application has been filed challenging the illegal sand mining being carried out through unauthorized dredging operations in the Godavari River at Kotilingala, Rajamahendravaram, in the State of Andhra Pradesh. It is alleged that such unlawful dredging activities are being conducted in dangerously close proximity to two major bridges, namely the Fourth Bridge (Gammon

Ch. Murali Krishna

Bridge) and the Road-cum-Rail Bridge situated near the Pushkar Ghat region of Rajamahendravaram and its surrounding areas, thereby posing a serious threat to public safety, structural stability, and the riverine ecosystem.

4. That it is humbly submitted that, the Ministry issued Environmental Impact Assessment (herein after referred as "EIA") Notification dated 14th September, 2006 which requires certain projects to obtain prior Environmental Clearance ("EC") before any construction work in case of new projects or expansion and modernization of existing projects or activities. The Schedule to the Notification details the categories or projects or activities which require prior environmental clearance.
5. That it is further submitted that all projects and activities are broadly categorized into two categories - Category "A" and Category "B", based on the spatial extent of potential impacts and potential impacts on human health and natural and manmade resources. All projects or activities included as Category 'A' in the Schedule, including expansion and modernization of existing projects or activities and change in product mix, require prior environmental clearance from the Central Government in the Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (MoEF&CC) and all projects or activities included as Category 'B' in the Schedule require prior environmental clearance from the State/Union territory Environment Impact Assessment Authority (SEIAA).
6. That it is submitted that in exercise of the powers conferred upon the Central Government under sub section (3) of section 3 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 and in accordance with the procedures specified in the EIA Notification, 2006, SEIAAs have been constituted in different States/UTs to discharge the functions of the regulatory authorities for the respective States/UTs.

Sh. P. Pratikrishna

7. It is most respectfully submitted that, the Ministry vide notification no. S.O. 637 (E) dated 28.02.2014 delegated the power to SEIAA to issue Show-Cause notice to project proponents in case of violation of the conditions of the Environmental Clearances (EC) issued by the said Authorities to projects or activities within their jurisdiction and to issue directions to the said project proponents for keeping such EC in abeyance or withdrawing them, if required, for violations. Copy of the Notification S.O. 637 (E) dated 28.02.2014 is marked and annexed herein as ANNEXURE R1/ 1.
8. That, it is most respectfully submitted that, the Ministry vide notification S.O. 1886 (E) dated 20.04.2022 has delegated the power to the State Level Environment Impact Assessment Authority (SEIAA) to grant Environmental Clearances to all minor mineral mining projects, irrespective of mine lease area and ≤ 250 ha mining lease area in respect of major mineral mining lease other than coal. Further, it is submitted that SEIAA, Andhra Pradesh has been constituted vide S.O. 1980(E) dated 22.10.2024 and its tenure is valid up to 21.10.2027. Copy of the Notification S.O. 1886 € dated 20.04.2022 is marked and annexed herein as Annexure No. R1/2.
9. It is respectfully submitted that the Answering Respondent has formulated guidelines, namely the 'Enforcement & Monitoring Guidelines for Sand Mining' (EMGSM-2020), which supplement the existing 'Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines, 2016' (SSMG-2016). These guidelines aim to enhance the monitoring of sand mining, covering the entire process from the identification of sand mineral sources to their dispatch and end-use by consumers and the general public. Additionally, EMGSM-2020 serves as a reference document for collecting critical information necessary for enforcing regulatory provisions and outlines essential infrastructural requirements for effective monitoring of sustainable

Ch. Prudhvi Krishna

sand mining. Furthermore, both EMGSM-2020 and SSMG-2016 shall be read and implemented in sync with each other. In the event of any ambiguity or inconsistency between the provisions of these documents, the provisions of the 'Enforcement & Monitoring Guidelines for Sand Mining-2020' shall prevail. Copy of the "Enforcement & Monitoring Guidelines for Sand Mining" (EMGSM-2020) is marked and annexed herewith as ANNEXURE R1/3 and Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines 2016 (SSMG-2016), is marked and annexed herewith as ANNEXURE R1/4.

10. It is humbly submitted that the various provisions with respect to sand mining near bridges the regard to the presence of bridges has been dealt in the 'Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines, 2016' (SSMG-2016), which clarifies that *"for carrying out mining in proximity to any bridge and / or embankment, appropriate safety zone shall be worked out on case to case basis to the satisfaction of SEAC / SEIAA, taking into account the structural parameters, locational aspects, flow rate etc., and no mining shall be carried out in the safety zone so worked out....."*.

Further, in EMGSM-2020 guidelines with respect to sand mining near bridges it has been mentioned at para 4.3 sub para (h) that, *"Sand and gravel shall not be extracted up to a distance of 1 kilometre (1 km) from major bridges and highways on both sides, or five times (5x) of the span (x) of a bridge/public civil structure (including water intake points) on up-stream side and ten times (10x) the span of such bridge on down-stream side, subjected to a minimum of 250 meters on the upstream side and 500 meters on the downstream side."*

11. That the Answering Respondent i.e. MoEF&CC vide Notification S.O. 1224 € dated 28.03.2020 exempted "Dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management" from the requirement of prior Environment Clearance under EIA Notification, 2006. Copy of Ministry's notification dated 28/3/2020 is marked and annexed herein as ANNEXURE R1/5.

Ch. P. Venkatesh Krishna

12. That, subsequently, MoEF&CC vide Notification S.O. 3840€ dated 30.08.2023 amended the aforementioned provision as "Dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management shall be subject to the compliance of environmental safeguards issued in this regard from time to time". Copy of Ministry's notification dated 30/08/2023 is marked and annexed herein as ANNEXURE R1/6.
13. That the Ministry vide O.M. dated 12.07.2023 directed that exemption from EC for dredging and desilting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals shall be subject to Environmental Safeguards as proposed in the National Framework for Sediment Management issued by the Ministry of Jal Shakti, Department of Water Resources, River Development and Ganga Rejuvenation. Copy of Ministry's O.M dated 12.07.2023 is marked and annexed herein as ANNEXURE R1/7.
14. Further, Ministry vide OM dated 21.08.2023 entrusted the monitoring of the compliance status of the aforementioned environmental safeguards to the State Pollution Control Board (SPCBs) /Pollution Control Committees (PCCs). Copy of Ministry's O.M dated 21.08.2023 is marked and annexed herein as ANNEXURE R1/8. The State Pollution Control Board is also the Nodal Authority in the State for dealing with cases related to pollution or environment management coming under the purview of the Water (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1974, the Air (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1981 and the Environment Protection Act 1986.
15. That it is respectfully submitted that State Department of Mines and Geology is the Nodal Authority in the State for dealing with the allotment of mining leases under the Mines and Minerals (Development and Regulation) Act (MMDR Act) and is entrusted with the

(Signature)
A. P. Kulkarni

enforcement and regulation of mining operations in a State including illegal mining. Further, the State Government is empowered under Section 23 C of the Mines and Minerals (Development and Regulation) Act 1957(MMDR Act) to make rules for prevention of illegal mining, transportation and storage of minerals.

16. That, in view of the aforementioned facts and circumstances, this Hon'ble Tribunal may kindly be pleased to pass appropriate order(s)/directions as the Hon'ble Tribunal may deem fit and proper in the interest of justice.

Ch. P. Prudh' Krishna

DEPONENT

VERIFICATION

डॉ. मुरली कृष्ण चिमटा / Dr. Murali Krishna Chimata
वैज्ञानिक "ई" / Scientist "E"
भारत सरकार / Government of India
पर्यावरण, वन और जलवायु परिवर्तन मंत्रालय
Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
उप-कार्यालय, विजयवाडा-520 010
Sub-Office, Vijayawada-520 010

Verified at Vijayawada on this 23rd day of March 2026 that the contents of this affidavit based on official record(s) maintained and information available in the office are true and correct, no part of it is false and nothing has been concealed there from.

Ch. P. Prudh' Krishna

DEPONENT

डॉ. मुरली कृष्ण चिमटा / Dr. Murali Krishna Chimata
वैज्ञानिक "ई" / Scientist "E"
भारत सरकार / Government of India
पर्यावरण, वन और जलवायु परिवर्तन मंत्रालय
Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
उप-कार्यालय, विजयवाडा-520 010
Sub-Office, Vijayawada-520 010

MINISTRY OF ENVIRONMENT, FOREST AND CLIMATE CHANGE

NOTIFICATION

New Delhi, the 20th April, 2022

S.O. 1886(E).—WHEREAS, the Central Government in the erstwhile Ministry of Environment and Forests, in exercise of its powers under sub-section (1) and clause (v) of sub-section (2) of section (3) of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 has published the Environment Impact Assessment Notification, 2006 (hereinafter referred to as the EIA Notification, 2006), vide number S.O.1533 (E), dated the 14th September, 2006 for mandating prior environmental clearance for certain category of projects;

And whereas, the State Environment Impact Assessment Authorities (SEIAAs) have been constituted under sub-section (3) of section 3 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 for implementation of the EIA Notification, 2006 at State level for exercising delegated powers to consider and grant Environmental Clearance (EC) for all proposals under Category B;

And whereas, the SEIAAs have gained substantial experience over the past fifteen years in the EC appraisal process and the process at the State level has also been made completely online through the PARIVESH portal for efficient and transparent disposal of EC proposals;

And whereas, the Central Government deems it necessary to further decentralise the EC process for facilitating clearances at State level;

And whereas, as on date, category 'B' projects, relating to national defence and strategic importance with significant element of security involvement are also being appraised at the State level which, the Central Government deems it necessary to be appraised centrally taking into account national security concerns;

Now, therefore, in exercise of the powers conferred by sub-section (1) and clause (v) of sub-section (2) of section 3 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 (29 of 1986), read with sub-rule(4) of rule 5 of the Environment (Protection) Rules, 1986, the Central Government, after having dispensed with the requirement of notice under clause (a) of sub-rule (3) of rule 5 of the said rules, in public interest, hereby makes the following further amendments in the notification of the Government of India, in the erstwhile Ministry of Environment and Forests, number S.O. 1533 (E), dated the 14th September, 2006, namely:-

In the said notification,-

(1) in paragraph 4, for sub-paragraph (iii a), the following shall be substituted, namely:-

(iii a) Such Category 'B' projects, relating to the National defence or strategic or security importance or those as notified by the Central Government on account of exigencies such as pandemics, natural disasters or to promote environmentally friendly activities under National Programmes or Schemes or Missions or such projects which are inordinately delayed beyond the stipulated timeline as laid down in this notification and also meet the criteria as laid down in this regard from time to time, shall be considered at the Central level as Category 'B' projects;

(2) in the Schedule,-

(i) against item 1(a),-

(a) in column (3),-

(A) for ">100 ha. of mining lease area in respect of non-coal mining lease", the following shall be substituted, namely:-

">250 ha mining lease area in respect of major mineral mining lease other than coal";

(B) for the symbol, figures and letters "> 150 ha", the symbol, figures and letters "> 500 ha" shall be substituted;

(b) in column (4),-

(A) for "≤ 100 ha of mining lease area in respect of non-coal mine lease", the following shall be substituted, namely:-

"All mining lease area in respect of minor mineral mining leases and ≤ 250 ha mining lease area in respect of major mineral mining lease other than coal";

- (B) for the symbols, figures and letters " ≤ 150 ha", the symbols, figures and letters " ≤ 500 ha" shall be substituted;
- (ii) against item 1(c),—
- (a) in column (3),—
- (A) in serial number (i), for the symbols, figures and letters " ≥ 50 MW", the symbols, figures and letters " ≥ 100 MW" shall be substituted;
- (B) serial number (ii) and the entries relating thereto shall be omitted;
- (b) in column (4),—
- (A) in serial number (i), for the symbol, figures and letters " < 50 MW", the symbol, figures and letters " < 100 MW" shall be substituted;
- (B) in serial number (ii),—
- (I) the word, symbol and figures "and $< 50,000$ ha." shall be omitted;
- (II) in point (c) in the table, the word, symbol and figures "to $< 50,000$ " shall be omitted;
- (c) in column (5), after serial number (ii), the following serial number shall be inserted, namely:—
- "(iii) Irrigation projects involving Inter-State issues shall be appraised at Central level without change in category.";
- (iii) against item 1(d),—
- (a) in column (3), for the symbols, figures and letters " ≥ 50 MW", the symbols, figures and letters " ≥ 100 MW" shall be substituted;
- (b) in column (4), for the symbol, figures and letters " < 50 MW", the symbol, figures and letters " < 100 MW" shall be substituted;
- (iv) against item 2(a),—
- (a) in column (3), for the symbols and figure " ≥ 1 ", the symbols and figures " ≥ 2.5 " shall be substituted;
- (b) in column (4), for the symbols and figure " < 1 ", the symbols and figures " < 2.5 " shall be substituted;
- (c) in column (5), after the existing paragraph, the following paragraph shall be inserted, namely:—
- "Integrated coal mining projects with washeries located within mining lease area shall continue to be considered at Central level or State level, as the case may be, as per the extant threshold for coal mining projects.";
- (v) against item 2 (b),—
- (a) in column (3), the existing entries shall be omitted;
- (b) in column (4), for the symbol, figures, words and letters " < 0.5 million TPA throughput", the words "All mineral beneficiation projects irrespective of the procedure for beneficiation" shall be substituted;
- (c) in column (5), after the existing paragraph, the following paragraph shall be inserted, namely:—
- "Integrated mining projects with beneficiation plants located within mining lease area shall continue to be considered at Central level or State level, as the case may be, as per the extant threshold for mining projects.";
- (vi) against item 7 (a),—
- (a) in column (3), for the words "All projects", the words "All new projects" shall be substituted;

(b) in column (4), the following shall be inserted, namely:—

“All expansions projects, including airstrips, which are for commercial use.”

[F. No. IA3-22/10/2022-IA.III]

Dr. SUJIT KUMAR BAJPAYEE, Jt. Secy.

Note : The principal notification was published in the Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section III, sub-section (ii), vide, number S.O. 1533(E), dated the 14th September, 2006 and was last amended, vide, the notification number S.O. 1807(E), dated the 12th April, 2022.



भारत का राजपत्र The Gazette of India

असाधारण

EXTRAORDINARY

भाग II—खण्ड 3—उप-खण्ड (ii)

PART II—Section 3—Sub-section (ii)

प्राधिकार से प्रकाशित

PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY

सं. 545]

नई दिल्ली, मंगलवार, मार्च 4, 2014/फाल्गुन 13, 1935

No. 545]

NEW DELHI, TUESDAY, MARCH 4, 2014/PHALGUNA 13, 1935

पर्यावरण और वन मंत्रालय

अधिसूचना

नई दिल्ली, 28 फरवरी, 2014

का.आ. 637(अ).—केन्द्रीय सरकार, पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) अधिनियम, 1986 (1986 का 29) की धारा 23 द्वारा प्रदत्त शक्तियों का प्रयोग करते हुए उक्त अधिनियम की धारा 5 के अधीन इसमें निहित शक्तियों को पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) अधिनियम, 1986 की धारा 3 की उप-धारा (3) के अधीन केंद्रीय सरकार द्वारा गठित किए गए सभी राज्य और संघराज्यक्षेत्र पर्यावरण समाघात प्राधिकरणों (जिन्हें इसमें इसके पश्चात् उक्त प्राधिकरण कहा गया है) को उक्त प्राधिकरणों द्वारा अपनी अधिकारिता के भीतर परियोजनाओं या क्रिया कलापों को जारी पर्यावरण अनापत्तियों की शर्तों के अतिक्रमण की दशा में परियोजना प्रस्तावकों को कारण बताओ नोटिस जारी करने तथा इस शर्त के अधीन कि केंद्रीय सरकार शक्तियों के ऐसे प्रत्यायोजन का प्रतिसंहरण कर सकेगी या उक्त अधिनियम की धारा 5 के उपबंधों को स्वयं अवलंब ले सकेगी, यदि केंद्रीय सरकार की राय में लोक हित में ऐसी कार्यवाही आवश्यक है, यदि अपेक्षित हो तो अतिक्रमणों के लिए उक्त परियोजना प्रस्तावकों को ऐसी पर्यावरण अनापत्तियों को उन्हें प्रास्थगित रखने या वापस लिए जाने हेतु निदेश जारी करने की शक्तियों का प्रत्यायोजन करती है।

[सं. जे-11013/2/2013-आई ए (आई)]

अजय त्यागी, संयुक्त सचिव

MINISTRY OF ENVIRONMENT AND FORESTS

NOTIFICATION

New Delhi, the 28th February, 2014

S.O. 637(E).—In exercise of the powers conferred by section 23 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 (29 of 1986), the Central Government hereby delegates the powers vested in it under section 5 of the said Act to all the State and Union Territory Environment Impact Assessment Authorities (Hereinafter referred to as the said Authorities) constituted by the Central Government under sub-section (3) of section 3 of Environment (Protection) Act, 1986, to issue show cause notice to project proponents in case of violation of the conditions of the environment clearances issued by the said Authorities to projects or activities within their jurisdiction and to issue directions to the said project proponents for keeping such environment clearances in abeyance or withdrawing them, if required, for violations, subject to the condition that the Central Government may revoke such delegations of powers or may itself invoke the provisions of section 5 of the said Act, if in the opinion of the Central Government such a Course of action is necessary in the public interest.

[No. J-11013/2/2013-IA. (I)]

AJAY TYAGI, Jt. Secy.

अधिसूचना

नई दिल्ली, 28 फरवरी, 2014

का.आ. 638(अ).—केन्द्रीय सरकार, पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) अधिनियम, 1986 (1986 का 29) की धारा 19 के खण्ड (क) द्वारा प्रदत्त शक्तियों का प्रयोग करते हुए उक्त की धारा के प्रयोजन के लिए इससे उपाबद्ध उस सारणी के स्तंभ (3) में उनमें से प्रत्येक के सामने उल्लिखित अधिकारिता के साथ उस सारणी के स्तंभ (2) में उल्लिखित प्राधिकरण या अधिकारी को प्रातिकृत करती है:

सारणी

क्रम संख्यांक	प्राधिकरण/अधिकारी	अधिकारिता
(1)	(2)	(3)
1.	पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) अधिनियम, 1986 की धारा 3 की उपधारा (3) के अधीन केन्द्रीय सरकार द्वारा गठित राज्य या संघ राज्यक्षेत्र स्तर पर्यावरण समाघात प्राधिकरण (एस.ई.आई.ए.ए.)	संपूर्ण राज्य या संघ राज्यक्षेत्र
2.	पर्यावरण और वन मंत्रालय (एम.ओ.ई.एफ.) के किन्हीं प्रादेशिक कार्यालयों में तैनात कोई निदेशक, वन संरक्षक या अपर प्रधान मुख्य वन संरक्षक	पर्यावरण और वन मंत्रालय द्वारा यथा-विनिश्चित प्रादेशिक कार्यालय की अधिकारिता

[सं. जे-11013/2/2013-आई ए (आई)]

अजय त्यागी, संयुक्त सचिव

NOTIFICATION

New Delhi, the 28th February, 2014

S.O. 638(E).—In exercise of the powers conferred by clause (a) of section 19 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 (29 of 1986), the Central Government hereby authorises the Authority or officer mentioned in column (2) of the Table hereto for the purpose of the said section with the jurisdiction mentioned against each of them in column (3) of that Table:

TABLE

S. No.	Authority/Officer	Jurisdiction
(1)	(2)	(3)
1.	State or Union Territory level Environment Impact Assessment Authority (SEIAA) constituted by the Central Government under sub-section (3) of section 3 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986.	Whole of State or Union Territory
2.	Any Director, Conservator of Forests or Additional Principal Chief Conservator of Forests Posted in any of the Regional Offices of the Ministry of Environment and Forests (MoEF).	Jurisdiction of the Regional Office as decided by the Ministry of Environment and Forests

[No. J-11013/2/2013-IA. (I)]

AJAY TYAGI, Jt. Secy.



Enforcement & Monitoring Guidelines for Sand Mining



Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate change

January, 2020

Table of Content

Sl. No.	Contents	Page
1	Introduction	02
2	Need for Policy Guidelines	04
3	Objective of Guidelines	09
4	Requirements for Monitoring & Enforcement	10
5	Replenishment Study	27
6	Enforcement Provisions	34
7	Recommendation of High Power Committee	41
8	General Approach for Sustainable Sand Mining	45
9	Monitoring Mechanism	48

Table of Annexure

Annexure		Page
Annexure - I	Details of Sand/M-Sand Sources	64
Annexure - II	List of Potential Mining Leases (Expiring & Proposed)	65
Annexure - III	Cluster & Contiguous Cluster details	66
Annexure - IV	Transportation Routes for individual leases and leases in Cluster	67
Annexure - V	Final List of Potential Mining Leases (Existing & Proposed)	68
Annexure - VI	Final List of Cluster & Contiguous Cluster	69
Annexure - VII	Final Transportation Routes for individual leases and leases in Cluster	70
Annexure - VIII	Salient provision for sand mining in the state of Tamil Nadu	71

1.0 INTRODUCTION

The Ministry of Environment Forest & Climate Change formulated the Sustainable Sand Management Guidelines 2016 which focuses on the Management of Sand Mining in the Country. But in the recent past, it has been observed that apart from management and systematic mining practices there is an urgent need to have a guideline for effective enforcement of regulatory provision and their monitoring.

Section 23 C of MMDR, Act 1957 empowered the State Government to make rules for preventing illegal mining, transportation and storage of minerals. But in the recent past, it has been observed that there was large number of illegal mining cases in the Country and in some cases, many of the officers lost their lives while executing their duties for curbing illegal mining incidence. The illegal and uncontrolled illegal mining leads to loss of revenue to the State and degradation of the environment.

India is developing at a faster pace and much technological advancement has already been taken place in the surveillance and remote monitoring in the field of mining. Thus, it is prudent to utilize the technological advancement for the effective monitoring of the mining activities particularly sand mining in the country.

Use of latest remote surveillance and IT services helps in effective monitoring of the sand mining activity in-country and also assist the government in controlling the illegal mining activity in the country. Thus, there is a need for an effective policy for monitoring of sand mining in the Country which can be enforced on the ground. These guidelines focus on the effective monitoring of the sand mining since from the identification of sand mineral sources to its dispatch and end-use by consumers and the general public. Further, the effective monitoring and enforcement require efforts from not only Government agencies but also by consumers and the general public.

It is the responsibility of every citizen of India to protect the environment and effective monitoring can only be possible when all the stakeholders viz. Central Government, State Government, Leaseholders/Mine Owners, Distributors, Dealers, Transporters and Consumers (bulk & retail) will contribute towards sustainable mining, and comply with all the statutory provisions. It is felt necessary to identify the minimum requirements across all geographical region to have a uniform protocol for monitoring and enforcement of regulatory provision prescribed for sustainable sand and gravel mining.

This document will serve as a guideline for collection of critical information for enforcement of the regulatory provision(s) and also highlights the essential infrastructural requirements necessary for effective monitoring for Sustainable Sand Mining.

The document is prepared in consideration of various orders/directions issued by Hon'ble NGT in matters pertaining to illegal sand mining and also based on the reports submitted by expert committees and investigation teams.

Further, this document is supplemental to the existing "Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guideline-2016" (SSMG-2016), and these two guidelines viz. "Enforcement & Monitoring Guidelines for Sand Mining" (EMGSM-2020) and SSMG-2016 shall be read and implemented in sync with each other. In case, any ambiguity or variation between the provision of both these document arises, the provision made in "Enforcement & Monitoring Guidelines for Sand Mining-2020 "shall prevail.

2.0 NEED FOR POLICY GUIDELINES

The Ministry of Environment, Forest & Climate Change (MoEF&CC) published Environmental Impact Assessment Notification 1994 which is only applicable for the Major Minerals more than 5 ha. In order to cover the minor minerals also into the preview of EIA, the MoEF&CC issued EIA Notification 2006 for Major & Minor Mineral more than 5 Ha. The Hon'ble Supreme Court in its Judgment dated the 27th February 2012 in I.A. No.12- 13 of 2011 in Special Leave Petition (C) No.19628-19629 of 2009, in the matter of Deepak Kumar etc. Vs. State of Haryana and Others etc. made prior environment clearance mandatory for mining of minor minerals irrespective of the area of mining lease. In order to comply with the judgment of Hon'ble Supreme Court, the Ministry issued S.O.141 (E) dated 15.01.2016. Further, MoEF&CC published Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines 2016 for scientific and sustainable sand mining in the Country. The recommendations for the management of sustainable sand extraction are the key objective of the Guidelines. Special emphasis is given on monitoring of the mined out material, which is key to the success of the environmental management plan. Use of IT and IT-enabled services for effective monitoring of the quantity of mined out material and transportation along with process re-engineering has been made a part of the Guidelines. Guidelines support the fundamental concept, promote environmental protection, limit negative physiological, hydrogeological and social impacts underpinning sustainable economic growth.

The Hon'ble NGT in its order dated 04.09.2018 in O.A. 173/2018 in the matter of Sudarsan Das vs. State of West Bengal & Ors. Inter-alia observed that ***"There can be no two views that an effective institutional monitoring mechanism is required not only at the stage when Environmental Clearance is granted but also at subsequent stages". "The guidelines focus on the preparation of District Survey Report and the Management Plan" ... We are of the view that all the safeguards which are suggested***

in sustainable sand mining guidelines as well as notification dated 15.01.2016 ought to be scrupulously followed.” ...It is a known fact that in spite of the above-suggested guidelines being in existence, on the ground level, illegal mining is still going on. The existing mechanism has not been successful and effective in remedying the situation.” ...” Since there is an utter failure in the current monitoring mechanism followed by the State Boards, SEIAAs and DEIAAs, it is required to be revised for effective monitoring of sand and gravel mining and a dedicated monitoring mechanism be set up.”

The Hon’ble NGT in its order dated 04.09.2018 in O.A. 173/2018 in the matter of Sudarsan Das vs. State of West Bengal & Ors. directed that ***MoEF&CC has issued directions from time to time under Section 3 and 5 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986. The MoEF&CC needs to revise its directions keeping in mind the following:***

- *Mining Surveillance System discussed in para 23 above be finalized in consultation with ISRO Hyderabad.*
- *Safeguards suggested in Sustainable Sand Mining Guidelines published by the MoEF&CC in the year 2016.*
- *Suggestions in the High Power Committee Report.*
- *The requirement of demarcation of boundaries being published in respect of different leases in the public domain.*
- *Need to issue SOP laying down mechanism to evaluate loss to the ecology and to recover the cost of restoration of such damage from the legal or illegal miners. Such evaluation must include the cost of mining material as well as the cost of ecological restoration and the net present value of future ecosystem services forgone.*
- *Need to set up a dedicated institutional mechanism for effective monitoring of sand and gravel mining which may also take care of mining done without any Environmental Clearance as well as mining done in violation of Environmental Clearance conditions.*

- *The Mining Department may make a provision for keeping apart at least 25% of the value of mined material for the restoration of the area affected by the mining and also for compensating the inhabitants affected by the mining.*
- *One of the conditions of every lease of mine or minerals would be that there will be independent environmental audit at least once in a year by reputed third party entity and report of such audit be placed in the public domain.*
- *In the course of such an environmental audit, a three-member committee of the local inhabitants will also be associated. Composition of three members committee may preferably include ex-servicemen, a former teacher and former civil servant. The Committee will be nominated by the District Magistrate.*

The Hon'ble NGT in its order dated 05.09.2018 in O.A. 44/2016 in the matter of Mushtakeem Vs. MoEF & CC & Ors. Inter-alia observed the following:

"Para 20. In Original Application No. 481/2016, the allegation is that there is the connivance of the District Administration with the miners and mining is going in violation of conditions of Environmental Clearance. According to the applicant, an effective mechanism is required to be evolved so that illegal mining does not place."

*"Para 22. We proceed to consider the main question proposed for the consideration stated earlier hereinabove as to **how to ensure the protection of the environment by checking illegal mining.**"*

"Para 23. We have dealt with the identical issue relating to the illegal sand mining in the border districts in the State of West Bengal and Odisha in the order dated 04th September 2018 in Sudarsan Das Vs. State of West Bengal & Ors., Original Application No. 173 of 2018. We have directed the MoEF&CC to revise the guidelines on the subject for an effective mechanism for sand mining, relevant portions of which are reproduced below: -..."

The Hon'ble NGT in its order dated 10.09.2018 in O.A. 304/2015 in the matter of Jai Singh & Anr.Vs. Union of India Ors. inter-alia observed the following:

*"Para 6. After disposal of the above matters, a disturbing event widely reported in media which took place on 07th September 2018 has been brought to our notice. **A Deputy Ranger who tried to stop illegal mining was killed by mining mafia at Morena in the State of M.P.***

"Para 7. The above disturbing event may also be kept in mind by the MoEF, while considering the issuance of revised guidelines in light of the judgment dated 05th September 2018 (Supra)."

The Hon'ble NGT in its order dated 05.04.2019 in O.A. 360/2015 in the matter of National Green Tribunal Bar Association & Anr.Vs. Union of India & Ors. inter-alia observed the following:

"The 2016 Guidelines need revision in the light of the report of High Powered Committee in September 2016, failure of Monitoring mechanism followed by State Boards, SEIAs, DEIAs and MSS system developed by Ministry of Mines & IBM with the assistance of BISAG and MAITY and other observations quoted in paras 12 to 15 above.

50. As noted earlier in paras 17, 23, 27, 31 and 35, States of West Bengal, Odisha, Gujarat, Karnataka, Maharashtra, Punjab, Haryana and Uttar

Pradesh are required to follow SSMG, 2016 as may be revised by MoEF&CC and even other States where illegal sand mining is taking place.

The States may review the monitoring mechanism in terms of several directions of the Tribunal and guidelines of MoEF&CC.

The international conservation concern regarding natural wealth is a universal demand. Article 51(a) subsection (G) of the constitution requires every citizen of India to protect and improve the natural environment including forest, lakes, rivers, wildlife and to have compassion for the living creature.

The Hon'ble Supreme Court in the case of M.C. Mehta Vs. Kamal Nath (1997) 1 SCC 388 held that under Article of Indian Constitution incorporates the "Public Trust Doctrine" and as such extents to the protection of all-natural resources which includes the protection of flora and fauna.

The Hon'ble Supreme Court in the case of Vellore Citizens Welfare Forum Vs. Union of India & Ors (1996) held that the precautionary principle is part of the Environmental Law in India. It further stated that onus of proof is on the actor of the developer/industrialize to show that its actions are environmentally benign."

3.0 OBJECTIVE OF GUIDLINES

- Identification and Quantification of Mineral Resource and its optimal utilization.
- To regulate the Sand & Gravel Mining in the Country since its identification to its final end-use by the consumers and the general public.
- Use of IT-enabled services & latest technologies for surveillance of the sand mining at each step.
- Reduction in demand & supply gaps.
- Setting up the procedure for replenishment study of Sand.
- Post Environmental Clearance Monitoring.
- Procedure for Environmental Audit.
- To control the instance of illegal mining.

4.0 REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING & ENFORCEMENT

Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines (SSMMG) 2016 and past experience suggest that the source of sand in India are through

- a) River (riverbed and flood plain),
- b) Lakes and reservoirs,
- c) Agricultural fields,
- d) Coastal / marine sand,
- e) Palaeo-channels and
- f) Manufactured Sand (M-Sand).

The SSMMG-2016 highlights the identification of the sand mining sources, replenishment of the River Bed Material (Sand, Boulder, Gravel, Cobble etc.), preparation of Districts Survey Report, and Standard Environmental Conditions suitable for sand mining projects.

The necessary requirements to comply with the direction of Hon'ble NGT and to facilitate effective monitoring and enforcement of regulatory provision for sand mining in the country are as follows:

- i) Identification of sand mining sources, its quantification and feasibility for mining considering various environmental (proximity of protected area, wetlands, creeks, forest etc.) and other factors such as important structures, places of archaeological importance, habitation, prohibited area etc.
- ii) The mining lease auctioned by State government as per their Minor Mineral Concession Rules are granted of Letter of Intent (LoI), but it has been observed that many of the sites are not suitable w.r.t environmental aspects. In most of the cases, the unplanned grant of mining lease leads to formation of cluster and/or contiguous cluster

of small mining leases which sometimes is difficult to regulate and monitor. In order to address such issues, more emphasis is required on the preparation of District Survey Report and its format for reporting,

- iii) Mining Plan is an important document to assist the mine owner to operate the mine in a scientific manner. States have their own format for preparation of mining plan and it is observed that recording of the initial level of mining lease at shorter interval say 25m X 25 m grid interval is not present.
- iv) There is no practice for regular replenishment study to ascertain the rate of depositing, plan and section needs to be prepared based on the restrictions provided in letter of intent and provisions of Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines 2016.
- v) Environmental Clearance is a process wherein the regulatory authorities after considering the potential environment impact of mining clearance is granted with a set of specific & standard conditions to carry out mining operations, but often it is observed that letter of intent is granted for a location which has less potential for mining and not feasible for environment-friendly mining. This leads to an unnecessary financial burden on the mine owners and litigations. Thus, LoI should be preferably granted for those locations which have the least possibility of an impact on the environment and nearby habitation.
- vi) It is the responsibility of the mine owner to obtain all the statutory clearance and comply with the conditions stipulated in the clearance letter. Mining should be carried out within the mining lease area as per

approved mining plan or mining plan concurred by other regulatory authorities.

- vii) Mining operation also involves transportation of mineral from the mining area to end-user and its necessary that movement of the mineral needs to be monitored.

The State Government already have power under section 23c of MMDR, Act 1957 to make rules for preventing illegal mining, transportation and storage of minerals. However, there are instances of illegal mining which shows that there is a need for strengthening the system of mineral dispatch and its monitoring. This document provides good practices already under implementation by various states for regulating the mineral sale, dispatch, storage, transportation and use.

- viii) The river reaches with sand provide the resource and thus it is necessary to ascertain the rate of replenishment of the mineral. Regular replenishment study needs to be carried out to keep a balance between deposition and extraction. This document provides the procedure to be followed for conducting replenishment study.
- ix) Even after all the regulatory procedure and policy being in place, there are instances where illegal mining is taking place. There is a need for regular surveillance of the sand mining reaches. The monitoring agencies can monitor the sites remotely by using Unmanned Artificial Vehicles (UAVs)/Drone which is now a viable option. The drone can also be used for reserves estimation, quantity estimation, land use monitoring. This document highlights possible use of IT/Satellite/Drone technology for effective monitoring of sand mining.

4.1 Identification of possible sand mining sources and preparation of District Survey Report (DSR)

4.1.1 Preparation of District Survey Report.

“Sustainable Sand Mining Guidelines, 2016” issued by MoEF&CC requires preparation of District Survey Report (DSR), which is an important initial step before grant of mining lease/Lol. The guidelines emphasize detailed procedure to be followed for the purpose of identification of areas of aggradation/ deposition where mining can be allowed and identification of areas of erosion and proximity to infrastructural structures and installation where mining should be prohibited. Calculation of annual rate of replenishment, allowing time for replenishment after mining, identification of ways of scientific and systematic mining; identifying measures for protection of environment and ecology and determining measures for protection of bank erosion, benchmark (BM) with respect to mean Sea Level (MSL) should be made essential in mining channel reaches (MCR) below which no mining shall be allowed.

The Hon’ble NGT in its Judgment dated 08.12.2017 in the matter of Anjani Kumar vs State of Uttar Pradesh & Ors. inter-alia mentioned the following regarding sand mining in the Uttar Pradesh.

“It states that the main object of preparation of District Survey Report is to ensure identification of areas of aggradation/deposition where mining can be allowed and identification of areas of erosion and proximity to infrastructural structures and installation where mining should be prohibited and calculation of annual rate of replenishment and allowing time for replenishment after mining area. Thus, the environmental protection requires a strictly regulated mining in terms of area, quantity as well as most importantly replenishment thereof.”

"The data collection and declared for preparation of DSR shall take precedence over other data and would form the foundation for providing mining lease in terms of Appendix- x to the Notification dated 15th January 2016 must be prepared by the statutory authority stated therein i.e. DEIAA prior to awarding of permits for carrying on mining activity in any part of the State of UP."

The Hon'ble High Court of Jharkhand at Ranchi in its orders dated the 11th April 2018 and 19th June 2018 in W.P. (PIL) No. 1806 of 2015, in the matter of Court on its Own Motion Versus the State of Jharkhand & Others with W.P. (PIL) No. 290 of 2013, in the matter of Hemant Kumar Shilkarwar Versus the State of Jharkhand & Others, has inter-alia directed the preparation of District Survey Report for minor minerals other than Sand and Bajri or delegation of the powers for preparation of format of District Survey Report of minor minerals other than sand and Bajri to the State Government and/or District Environment Impact Assessment Authority and District Expert Appraisal Committee. To comply with the direction of Hon'ble High Court the Ministry has issued S.O. 3611(E) dated 25.07.2018, wherein, the procedure of preparation of DSR is mentioned. But it is felt that still there is other information that needs to be reported in DSR to make it a comprehensive DSR.

Therefore, preparation of District Survey Report is a very important step and sustainable sand mining in any part of the country will depends on the quality of District Survey Report.

Considering the importance of district survey report, the Ministry of Environment Forest and climate change, after consultation with experts dealing with mining-related matters, formulated the following guidelines for the preparation of comprehensive District Survey Report for sand mining.

- a) District Survey Report for sand mining shall be prepared before the auction/e-auction/grant of the mining lease/Letter of Intent (LoI) by Mining department or department dealing the mining activity in respective states.
- b) The first step is to develop the inventory of the River Bed Material and Other sand sources in the District. In order to make the inventory of River Bed Material, a detailed survey of the district needs to be carried out, to identify the source of River Bed Material and alternative source of sand (M-Sand). The source will include rivers, de-siltation of reservoir/dams, Patta lands/Khatedari Land, M-sand etc.

The revenue department of Kerala already conducted river mapping and sand auditing of around 20 rivers of Kerala which is a good example wherein the profile of rivers was created at regular intervals and aggradation/deposition was identified along with water level. In the same study, benchmarks were also created at a prominent location at regular interval for future surveying. Such study helps the mining departments to identify the source of sand.

Thus, it is proposed that for preparation of district survey report, the auditing of rivers needs to be carried out. There is already a provision under MMDR Act 2015 for National Mineral Exploration Trust (MET) wherein a 2% of royalty amount to be deposited in the trust. This fund is used for mineral exploration in the country. The Sand Auditing is also a sort of identification of mineral and State Government may request Central Govt. for proving funds for river auditing. The Central Govt. (Ministry of Mines) may also explore the possibilities for providing the funds for river auditing. The other option is that State Govt. may conduct such studies by its own fund and the same may be recovered from the leaseholders to whom the mining lease will be allocated.

- c) District Survey Report is to be prepared in such a way that it not only identifies the mineral-bearing area but also define the mining and no mining zones considering various environmental and social factors.
- d) Identification of the source of Sand & M-Sand. The sources may be from Rivers, Lakes, Ponds, Dams, De-silting locations, Patta land/Khtedari lands. The details in case of Rivers such as [name, length of river, type (Perennial or Non-Perennial), Villages, Tehsil, District], in case of Lakes, Ponds, Dams, De-silting locations [Name, owned/maintained by (State Govt./PSU), area, Villages, Tehsil, District] in case of Patta land/Khtedari lands [Owner Name, Sy No, Area, Agricultural/Non-Agricultural, Villages, Tehsil, District], in case of M-Sand Plant [Owner Name, Sy No, Area, Quantity/Annum, Villages, Tehsil, District], needs to be recorded as per format given in **Annexure-I**.
- e) Defining the sources of Sand/M-Sand in the district is the next step for identification of the potential area of deposition/aggradation wherein mining lease could be granted. Detailed survey needs to be carried out for quantification of minerals. The purpose of mining in the river bed is for channelization of rivers so as to avoid the possibility of flooding and to maintain the flow of the rivers. For this, the entire river stretch needs to be surveyed and original ground level (OGL) to be recorded and area of aggradation/deposition needs to be ascertained by comparing the level difference between the outside riverbed OGL and water level. Once the area of aggradation/deposition are identified, then the quantity of River Bed Material available needs to be calculated. The next step is channelization of the river bed and for this central $\frac{3}{4}$ th part of the river, width needs to be identified on a map. Out of the $\frac{3}{4}$ th part area, where there is a deposition/aggradation of the material needs to be identified. The remaining $\frac{1}{4}$ th area needs to be kept as no mining zone for the

protection of banks. The specific gravity of the material also needs to be ascertained by analyzing the sample from a NABL accredited lab. Thus, the quantity of material available in metric ton needs to be calculated for mining and no mining zone.

Note: As physical survey with conventional method is time-consuming, use of unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) may be explored to carry out the survey and finalizing the original ground level and for developing a 3D model of the area.

- f) The permanent boundary pillars need to be erected after identification of an area of aggradation and deposition outside the bank of the river at a safe location for future surveying. The distance between boundary pillars on each side of the bank shall not be more than 100 meters.
- g) Identifying the mining and no mining zone shall follow with defining the area of sensitivity by ascertaining the distance of the mining area from the protected area, forest, bridges, important structures, habitation etc. and based on the sensitivity the area needs to be defined in sensitive and non-sensitive area.
- h) Demand and supply of the Riverbed Material through market survey needs to be carried out. In addition to this future demand for the next 5 years also needs to be considered.
- i) It is suggested that as far as possible the sensitive areas should be avoided for mining, unless local safety condition arises. Such deviation shall be temporary & shall not be a permanent feature.
- j) The final area selected for the mining should be then divided into mining lease as per the requirement of State Government. It is suggested the mining lease area should be so selected as to cover the entire deposition area. Dividing a large area of deposition/aggradation into smaller

mining leases should be avoided as it leads to loss of mineral and indirectly promote illegal mining.

- k) Cluster situation shall be examined. A cluster is formed when one mining lease of homogenous mineral is within 500 meters of the other mining lease. In order to reduce the cluster formation mining lease size should be defined in such a way that distance between any two clusters preferably should not be less than 2.5 Km. Mining lease should be defined in such a way that the total area of the mining leases in a cluster should not be more than 10 Ha.
- l) The number of a contiguous cluster needs to be ascertained. Contiguous cluster is formed when one cluster is at a distance of 2.5 Km from the other cluster.
- m) The mining outside the riverbed on Patta land/Khatedari land be granted when there is possibility of replenishment of material. In case, there is no replenishment then mining lease shall only be granted when there is no riverbed mining possibility within 5 KM of the Patta land/Khatedari land. For government projects, mining could be allowed on Patta land/Khatedari land but the mining should only be done by the Government agency and material should not be used for sale in the open market. Cluster situation as mentioned in para k above is also applicable for the mining in Patta land/Khatedari land.
- n) The State Government should define the transportation route from the mining lease considering the maximum production from the mines as at this stage the size of mining leases, their location, the quantity of mineral that can be mined safely etc. is available with the State Government. It is suggested that the transportation route should be selected in such a way that the movement of trucks/tippers/tractors from the villages having habitation should be avoided. The transportation route so

selected should be verified by the State Government for its carrying capacity.

- o) Potential site for mining having its impact on the forest, protected area, habitation, bridges etc, shall be avoided. For this, a sub-divisional committee may be formed which after the site visit shall decide its suitability for mining. The list of mining lease after the recommendation of the Committee needs to be defined in the following format given in as **Annexure-II**. The Sub-Divisional Committee after the site visit shall make a recommendation on the site for its suitability of mining and also records the reason for selecting the mining lease in the Patta land. The details regarding cluster and contiguous cluster needs to be provided as in **Annexure-III**. The details of the transportation need to be provided as in **Annexure IV**.
- p) **Public consultation**-The Comments of the various stakeholders may be sought on the list of mining lease to be auctioned. The State Government shall give an advertisement in the local and national newspaper for seeking comments of the general public on the list of mining lease included in the DSR. The DSR should be placed in the public domain for at least one month from the date of publication of the advertisement for obtaining comments of the general public. The comments so received shall be placed before the sub-divisional committee for active consideration. The final list of sand mining areas [leases to be granted on riverbed & Patta land/Khatedari land, de-siltation location (ponds/lakes/dams), M-Sand Plants (alternate source of sand)] after the public hearing needs to be defined in the final DSR in the format as per **Annexure-V**. The details regarding cluster and contiguous cluster needs to be provided in **Annexure-VI**. The details of the transportation need to be provided in **Annexure-VII**.

4.2 Grant of Letter of Intent to those mining leases which are falling in potential mining zone

The State Government shall issue letter of intent as per procedure laid down in their Minor Mineral Concession Rules with due consideration of final district survey report. The State Government shall ensure that all the letter of intent shall have complete details of the mining lease including geo-coordinate of the corner points, the involvement of forest land, distance from the forest land, distance from the protected area, distance from other sites of archaeological importance, details of the cluster situation etc. The demarcation of the boundaries of Lol/Lease area shall be placed in public domain along with Lol/lease deed details.

The LOI should not be granted for mining area falling on both riverbed and outside riverbed. Therefore, in the same lease, both types of area should not be included.

The authority responsible for grant of lease for sand mining shall ensure that annual audit of the sand mining process, production and compliance of the imposed conditions by regulatory authority (Environmental clearance or mine plan) shall be one of the essential condition of the lease agreement. The annual audit report shall be submitted to the district administration, which shall be put in public domain through the district website. Any deviation observed shall be appropriately and in accordance with applicable law shall be dealt by the concerned authority and corrective measures shall also be taken to restoration of ecological/environmental damage, if observed.

4.3 Mining Plan

The preparation of Mining Plan is also very important. The mining plan should include the original ground level recorded at an interval not more than 10M x 10M along & across the length of the river. In addition to this-levels, outside the mining lease and bank of the river up to meters needs to be recorded. In the mining plan, there should be 3 plates for each year production & development planning (pre-monsoon, monsoon and post-monsoon). The time period of monsoon should be defined in the DSR. At the time of review of the mining plan, the details of the replenishment study conducted for all the years needs to be included in the mining plan. The Mining Plan should include the certificate from PCCF on forest land, distance from the protected area, past production details for mining leases seeking expansion.

Following considerations shall be kept in mind for sand/gravel mining while approving mining plan

- a) Parts of the river reach that experience deposition or aggradation shall be identified. The Leaseholder/ Environmental Clearance holder may be allowed to extract the sand and gravel deposit in these locations to manage aggradation problem.
- b) The distance between sites for sand and gravel mining shall depend on the replenishment rate of the river. Sediment rating curve for the potential sites shall be developed and checked against the extracted volumes of sand and gravel.
- c) Sand and gravel may be extracted across the entire active channel during the dry season.

- d) Abandoned stream channels on the terrace and inactive floodplains be preferred rather than active channels and their deltas and flood plains. The stream should not be diverted to form the inactive channel.
- e) Layers of sand and gravel which could be removed from the river bed shall depend on the width of the river and replenishment rate of the river.
- f) Sand and gravel shall not be allowed to be extracted where erosion may occur, such as at the concave bank.
- g) Segments of the braided river system should be used preferably falling within the lateral migration area of the river regime that enhances the feasibility of sediment replenishment.
- h) Sand and gravel shall not be extracted up to a distance of 1 kilometre (1 km) from major bridges and highways on both sides, or five times (5x) of the span (x) of a bridge/public civil structure (including water intake points) on up-stream side and ten times (10x) the span of such bridge on down-stream side, subjected to a minimum of 250 meters on the upstream side and 500 meters on the downstream side.
- i) The sediment sampling should include the bed material and bed material load before, during and after the extraction period. Develop a sediment rating curve at the upstream end of the potential reach using the surveyed cross-section. Using the historical or gauged flow rating curve, determine the suitable period of high flow that can replenish the extracted volume. Calculate the extraction volume based on the sediment rating curve and high flow period after determining the allowable mining depth.

- j) Sand and gravel could be extracted from the downstream of the sand bar at river bends. Retaining the upstream one to two-thirds of the bar and riparian vegetation is accepted as a method to promote channel stability.
- k) The flood discharge capacity of the river could be maintained in areas where there is a significant flood hazard to existing structures or infrastructure. Sand and gravel mining may be allowed to maintain the natural flow capacity based on surveyed cross-section history. Alternatively, off-channel or floodplain extraction is recommended to allow rivers to replenish the quantity taken out during mining.
- l) The Piedmont Zone (Bhabhar area) particularly in the Himalayan foothills, where riverbed material is mined, this sandy-gravelly track constitutes excellent conduits and holds the greater potential for groundwater recharge. Mining in such areas should be preferred in locations selected away from the channel bank stretches.
- m) Mining depth should be restricted to 3 meters and distance from the bank should be $\frac{1}{4}$ th or river width and should not be less than 7.5 meters.
- n) The borrow area should preferably be located on the riverside of the proposed embankment because they get silted in the course of time. For low embankment, less than 6 m in height, borrow area should not be selected within 25 m from the toe/heel of the embankment. In the case of the higher embankment, the distance should not be less than 50 m. In order to obviate the development of flow parallels to the embankment, crossbars of width eight times the depth of borrow pits spaced 50 to 60 meter center-to-center should be left in the borrow pits.

- o) Demarcation of mining area with pillars and geo-referencing should be done prior to the start of mining.
- p) A buffer distance /un-mined block of 50 meters after every block of 1000 meters over which mining is undertaken or at such distance as may be the directed/prescribed by the regulatory authority shall be maintained.
- q) A buffer distance /unmined block of 50 meters after every block of 1000 meters over which mining is undertaken or at such distance as may be the directed/prescribed by the regulatory authority shall be maintained.
- r) River bed sand mining shall be restricted within the central 3/4th width of the river/rivulet or 7.5 meters (inward) from river banks but up to 10% of the width of the river, as the case may be and decided by regulatory authority while granting environmental clearance in consultation with irrigation department. Regulating authority while regulating the zone of river bed mining shall ensure that the objective to minimize the effects of riverbank erosion and consequential channel migration are achieved to the extent possible. In general, the area for removal of minerals shall not exceed 60% of the mine lease area, and any deviation or relaxation in this regard shall be adequately supported by the scientific report.
- s) Mining Plan for the mining leases(non-government) on agricultural fields/Patta land shall only be approved if there is a possibility of replenishment of the mineral or when there is no riverbed mining possibility within 5 KM of the Patta land/Khatedari land. For government projects mining could be allowed on Patta land/Khatedari land but the mining should only be done by the Government agency and material should not be used for sale in the open market.

The minerals reserve for river bed area is calculated on the basis of maximum depth of 3 meters and margins, width and other dimensions as mentioned in para (s) above. The area multiplied by depth gives the volume and volume multiplied with bulk density gives the quantity in Metric Ton. In case of river bed, mineable material per hectare area available for actual mining shall not exceed the maximum quantity of 60,000 MT per annum.

4.4 Obtaining Environmental & Other Statutory Clearance

The LOI Holder/Lease Holder to obtain Environmental and Other Statutory Clearances from the concerned authorities as per provision of applicable laws.

4.5 Baseline date before Commencement of Mining Operations

Baseline data in respect of the initial level of mining lease in the interval not more than 25 X 25 meters shall be collected for record by leaseholder. The level of river bed upstream and downstream up to 100 meters also needs to be recorded. The area outside the mining lease/river bank (if lease boundary coincides with mining lease) up to 100 meters from both the banks/mining lease needs to surveyed for initial level.

4.6 Additional measures where project proponent is selected by a bidding

In those states where sand plots are auctioned to the highest bidder, the following is suggested:

It has been observed that bidders try to form a cartel and bids are received for certain plots where legal mining is done, and bids for certain other plots don't elicit any response. Sand from these un-

auctioned plots is then excavated using the same machinery deployed for the excavation of adjacent plot which might have been auctioned off. It is not easily possible for the field machinery to prevent such illegal activities. This may be prevented by having plot of larger size. plots are large in size as possible are identified for auction. Care may be taken to ensure that no continuous stretch of plot in the river bed is divided for auction. A continuous stretch of plot shall be preferred for auction, and the attempt may not be made to auction it off in pieces.

5.0 REPLENISHMENT STUDY

The need for replenishment study for river bed sand is required in order to nullify the adverse impacts arising due to excessing sand extraction. Mining within or near riverbed has a direct impact on the stream's physical characteristics, such as channel geometry, bed elevation, substratum composition and stability, in-stream roughness of the bed, flow velocity, discharge capacity, sediment transport capacity, turbidity, temperature etc. Alteration or modification of the above attributes may cause an impact on the ecological equilibrium of the riverine regime, disturbance in channel configuration and flow-paths. This may also cause an adverse impact on in-stream biota and riparian habitats. It is assumed that the riparian habitat disturbance is minimum if the replenishment is equal to excavation for a given stretch. Therefore, to minimize the adverse impact arising out of sand mining in a given river stretch, it is imperative to have a study of replenishment of material during the defined period.

5.1 Generic Structure of Replenishment Study

Initially replenishment study requires four surveys. The first survey needs to be carried out in the month of April for recording the level of mining lease before the monsoon. The second survey is at the time of closing of mines for monsoon season. This survey will provide the quantity of the material excavated before the offset of monsoon. The third survey needs to be carried out after the monsoon to know the quantum of material deposited/replenished in the mining lease. The fourth survey at the end of March to know the quantity of material excavated during the financial year. For the subsequent years, there will be a requirement of only three surveys. The results of year-wise surveys help the state government to establish the replenishment rate of the river. Based on the replenishment rate future auction may be planned.

The replenishment period may vary on nature of the channel and season of deposition arising due to variation in the flow. Such period and season may vary on the geographical and precipitation characteristic of the region and requires to be defined by the local agencies preferable with the help of the Central Water Commission and Indian Meteorological Department. The excavation will, therefore, be limited to estimated replenishment estimated with consideration of other regulatory provisions.

5.2 Methodology for Replenishment Study

The replenishment estimation is based on a theoretical empirical formula with the estimation of bedload transport comprising of analytical models to calculate the replenishment estimation. The iso-pluvial maps of IMD can be used for estimation of rainfall. Catchment yield is computed using different standard empirical formulas relevant to the geographical and channel attributes. eg. Strange's Monsoon runoff curves for runoff coefficient). Peak flood discharge for the study area can be calculated by using Dickens, Jarvis and Rational formula at 25, 50 and 100 years return period. The estimation of bed load transport using Ackers and White Equation or similar can be made. A simulation model is used with basic data generated from the field in the pre-study and post-study period (preferably pre-monsoon and post-monsoon) to estimate the volume of replenished material. The particle size distribution and bulk density of the deposited material are required to be assessed from a NABL recognized laboratory. Considering the bulk density and the volume, the estimation of replenishment in weight will be calculated after considering safeguards and stability of the slopes and riverine regime. Some of the common methods used for field data acquisition for replenishment study

5.2.1. Physical survey of the field by the conventional method

- i. The conventional survey technical using DGPS and other survey tools are used to define the topography, contours and offsets of the lease area. The survey should clearly depict the important attributes of the stretch of the river and its nearby important civil and other feature of importance. Such information will provide the eligible spatial area for mining. The contour and the elevation benchmarks will provide the baseline data for assessing the pre and post-study period scenario.
- ii. Physical benchmarks are to be fixed at appropriate intervals (preferable 1 in 30 m) and the Reduced Level (RL) shall be validated from a nearby standard RL. These RL should be engraved on a steel plate (Bench Plate) and shall be fixed and placed at locations which are free from any damages and are available in pre and post-study period. The bench plates shall be available for use during the mining period as reference for all mining activity. Reference pillar may also be used in place of Bench Plates with visible and readable demarcation on the ground as common reference points to control the topographic survey and mining activity.
- iii. Baseline data on elevation status for a grid of 10 m x 10 m is preferred to have accuracy in the assessment. It is expected that two consecutive cross-sections in longitudinal and lateral direction should not be more than 10-meter distance apart, however, the regulatory authority may fix these intervals depending on the geographical and site-specific conditions, only and after providing the scientific reason for such deviation.
- iv. The changes observed in the elevation in pre and post scenario at each node should be depicted in graphical forms with an appropriate scale to estimate the area of deposition and erosion. These graphical

presentations should depict the active channel regime and the flow bed elevation with other important features required to be considered for estimation of the mining area. The area of deposition and erosion shall be calculated for each cross-section after giving due regard to the stability and safety of active channel banks, and other features of importance. The elevation level shall be in reference to the nearest bench-plates established for the purpose.

- v The levels (MSL & RL) of the corner point of each grid should be identifiable and safety barriers (Non-Mining) demarcated as restricted in consensus with Mineral Concession Rules of respective State, and the provision mentioned in this Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines.
- vi A clear identification is required to be highlighted between grids under mineable and grids under the non-mineable area. These baseline data (pre and post) be subjected to stimulation with the help of data mine software to derive at the replenishment area and corresponding volume and estimated weight.
- vii The database should be structured in a tabulated form clearly depicting the nomenclature of the section lines, latitude and longitude of the starting point, chain-age and respective levels of all the points taken on that section line.
- viii Net area shall be derived after the summation of the area of deposition minus area of erosion for each cross-section. The volume will be estimated by multiplying the distance between two cross-sections with the average of net area of these two consecutive cross-sections.
- ix One sample per 900 square meters (30 m x 30 m) shall be preferred sample density for assessment of bulk density for estimation of deposition rate. Care should be taken that the sample for assessment

of bulk density is taken from the deposition zone and not from erosion. However, depending on the site condition, river morphology and geographical condition, sample density may be adjusted. Reason for such deviation shall be appropriately highlighted in the report with supporting scientific data.

5.2.2. Use of UAV/Drone and other image data processing techniques

With the development in image data processing tools and its accuracy acceptability, Drone/UAV fitted with the advance camera are used for survey purposes. Such technology has promising potential in the survey of sand mining zones due to its fast and reliable output deliveries. The survey is conducted using a set of instruments and compatible software to utilized the properly referenced data for depicting the topography of the study area. Instrument calibration and software compatibility and its validation with the ground data are an essential requirement for using this technique.

The details of the instruments their limitation and software used shall be demonstrated in the form of the accuracy assessment report, through a chapter in the replenishment study report. Other details to be incorporated in the report with regard to the study using such imaginary techniques shall highlight the followings:

- a) **Flight Planning:** - The lease co-ordinates and the flight plan devised to capture the front and side overlap percentages for in each flight in reference to global coordinates (Kml or SHP file) system. The software used for the purpose and its details along with limitations with basic analytical assumptions.
- b) **Block file generation:** - This operation concerns the selection of the sensor model and the definition of block properties, the addition of

imagery to the block file, marking of GCPs, generation of tie points and refining of the model.

- c) **Interior orientation:** - The interior orientation of the stereo pair rational polynomial coefficients (RPC) used, which should be bundled with the scenes. RPCs are coefficient, which is used by photogrammetric software to represent the ground to-image viewing geometry.
- d) **Exterior orientation:** For exterior orientation, ground control points shall be used, which are collected from the DGPS survey.
- e) **Aero Triangulation:** - A critical phase in photogrammetric mapping is to rectify the satellite imagery at an appropriate tract on the surface of the earth. This is accomplished by collecting horizontal and vertical data [GCP's] to ascertain the spatial location of a number of features that are visible and measurable on the aerial images – this process is often called control bridging, which refers to passing horizontal and vertical information from one aerial image to the next.
- f) **Ortho Generation:** - After running the above steps; the software shall automatically generate orthorectified imagery.
- g) **DTM extraction:** For extraction of DTM, Generated point cloud data classified manually to extract bare earth.

5.2.3 Accuracy Assessment of Aerial Data:

To check the accuracy of DTM generated by Aerial data, few points are selected and compared with on-site by using DGPS instrument for the ground-truthing purpose. It is preferred to do ground-truthing at minimum 5 locations spread evenly across the lease area. The readings from the DGPS instrument are then compared with the Drone data for accuracy assessment

purpose. A comparative chart will be prepared in comparison of Data related to ground-truthing (by DGPS) and from Drone. Such accuracy assessment report shall a chapter of the replenishment study.

5.2.4 Replenishment study shall have the details of

- List of instruments
- List of software
- Establishment of Benchmark by putting No. of pillar points and various Ground Control Points (GCP) at the site.
- Ground Control Points (GCP) Collection: - Various GCPs were observed by using DGPS for Permanent Benchmarks and for control points.
- The summary of the elevation data from each section's profile based on the post-monsoon the survey should have mentioned in the table form.
- The detail of post-monsoon survey data in the tabular form shall be
- The detailed comparison of both pre-monsoon and post-monsoon elevation data shall be attached
- Cross-sectional depiction of deposition and erosion for each section in pre and post-deposition season shall be given supported by relevant field study data and plan.

6.0 ENFORCEMENT

6.1 Mining Operation:

The mining operations should be strictly carried out in accordance with the approved mining plan and after complying with all the conditions stipulated in Environmental & Other Statutory Clearance. Mine owner shall follow the operational procedure (for sale, dispatch, storage, reserve reconciliation and transportation) as may be defined by the concerned state government in its monitoring guidelines. Mine owner should comply with the recommendation and suggestion made by the High Power Committee as applicable.

6.2 Post Environment Cleanace Monitoring:

It's the responsibility of the EC Holder to comply with the Environmental Clearance conditions and upload the six-monthly EC compliance report on the website of the Ministry. For the category, 'A' mines (>100 Ha individual & cluster) Regional Office of the MoEF&CC are entrusted to carry out EC Monitoring and for the Category 'B' Mines by SEIAA. The monitoring shall be carried out as per the procedure/schedule suggested by MoEF&CC from time to time. MOEF&CC vide its notification S.O. 637(E) dated 28.02.2014 has delegated the power to State/Union Territory Environmental Impact Assessment Authority to issue show cause notice to project proponent in case of violation of Conditions of Environmental Clearance issued by the said authority and to issue direction for keeping the said EC in abeyance or withdrawing it. Thus, for category 'B' (0 to 100 Ha) projects SEIAAs are responsible for EC monitoring.

6.3 Environment Audit:

The Hon'ble NGT in its order dated 04.09.2018 in O.A. 173/2018 in the matter of Sudarsan Das vs. State of West Bengal & Ors. Inter-alia directed

that "One of the conditions of every lease of mine or minerals would be that there will be independent environmental audit at least once in a year by reputed third party entity and report of such audit be placed in the public domain. In the course of such an environmental audit, a three-member committee of the local inhabitants will also be associated. Composition of three member's committee may preferably include ex-servicemen, a former teacher and former civil servant. The Committee will be nominated by the District Magistrate.

The gazette notification on environmental audit has been issued by the Ministry of Environment and Forests on March 13, 1992 (amended vide notification GSR 386 (E) dated April 22, 1993). This notification applies to every person carrying on an industry, operation or process requiring consent to operate under Section 25 of the Water (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1974 (6 of 1974) or under section 21 of the Air (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1981 (14 of 1981), or both, or authorization under the Hazardous Waste (Management and Handling) Rules, 1989, issued under the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 (29 of 1986). The notification requires that an Environmental Statement for the financial year ending the 31st March be submitted to the concerned State Pollution Control Board, on or before the 30th September of the same year.

It is suggested that NABET Accredited consultant may be engaged for Environment Audit and during the course of the audit, a three-member committee nominated by District Magistrate shall be associated.

6.4 Monitoring of Sale & Purchase of Sand:

6.4.1 In order to curb illegal mining it is very necessary that the general public is aware of the legal source of sand and RBM suppliers. The Ministry of Mines issued **Sand Mining Framework 2018** wherein it has proposed two mechanisms for the online sale of sand depending on whether there is a free market for sand in the State or the prices are regulated by the Government.

Para 1.2.12.2 Under the market model

In the case of the market model, all the lessees/ certified dealers in the State should register themselves on the online portal/ mobile app. For registering, the lessee/ certified dealer will have to enter the details of its concession/ stockyard, location, the quantity of sand expected on a weekly basis, as per the approved mining plan. Once registered, the online portal/ app will display the name of the reach/ stockyard and sand could be booked by the consumer from those leases/ stockyards and prices up to the delivery level. Further, the lessee/ certified dealer needs to regularly update the sand available in the reach/ stockyard, and they can decide the price at which they want to sell their sand. Anyone who wishes to purchase sand in the State will have the following options for buying:

- 1. Mobile app*
- 2. Online portal*
- 3. Customer care/ telephone call*
- 4. Licensed traders*

The consumer needs to register on the portal and log in using his/her credentials (Aadhar card based only). After logging in, the portal will display the entire list of reaches/ stockyards along with the quantity of sand available in those reaches/ stockyards and the quality and price of

sand. The consumer can filter/ sort the reaches/ stockyards based on such parameters as location, quality and price, and book from the lease/ stockyard he/she wishes to. The consumer should also have the option to purchase the sand by ordering at customer care. Also, stockyards should be made around all the major consumption hubs in the State based on their estimated demand.

Para 1.2.12.3 Controlled market prices

In case the prices are regulated by the State Government, the only difference from the previous model is that the price of sand at the river reach/ stockyard shall be uniform across the State/ district based on the quality and transportation lead. A consumer after logging in may choose the reach/ stockyard from which he/she wishes to purchase the sand. The payment for booking the sand in both the cases should be made on the portal/ app so that proper accounting of the sale of sand can be maintained by the Government. Also, stockyards should be made around all the major consumption hubs in the State based on their estimated demand.

It is suggested that the State Government should develop an online portal for sale and purchase of Sand & RBM. In addition to this State Government shall decide on the model viz. *Under market model or Controlled market prices or both* to be adopted for their respective States. The State Government shall accordingly modify their Minor Mineral Concession Rules within 6 months of publication of these guidelines. It is suggested that the controlled price model is more effective in controlling illegal sand mining. Because if the State Government is the only agency to provide the sand in the State, then price and supply of sand can be controlled more effectively. There will be no confusion in the consumers about legality of the purchase as the only source of sand provider is the State Government through its network of registered stockiest, retailers and transporters. The consumers

can fill the online request, pay the amount, select the transporter and give its feedback after the receipt of the sand. The transportation can also be controlled as the tippers used for transportation is registered tippers with GPS facility, the transportation route is well defined for easy monitoring, control over overloading of tippers, control over spillage of mineral etc. The State Govt. shall also make provision for penalizing the persons/agency buying the sand and RBM from the illegal sources.

6.4.2 The Ministry of Mines in its Sand Mining Framework also mentioned the following different level of monitoring:

Para 1.2.13.1 Level 1- Reach/ Stockyard level monitoring

For monitoring of the active reaches:

- a. *Quantity of sand to be extracted from the reach should be based on the quantity of sand assessed in the reach by the Joint Inspection Team.*
- b. *The lease boundary should be demarcated with geo-coordinates or geo-fenced to ensure that sand extraction is going on only within the permitted area.*
- c. *De-casting from river beds should be monitored on a regular basis to keep a track of excavated quantity.*
- d. *After every two years, a mandatory audit of the quantity extracted and quantity permitted along with the replenishment rate.*
- e. *Mandatory e-pass/ e-permit should be made available at reach level for transportation of any sand by any GPS enabled vehicle with the provision of entering the vehicle number of the sand carrying vehicle and expected delivery address and customer name/ mobile number. Also, provision should be made available for stockyards/ stockiest of sand. In the case of*

nomination based (controlled pricing) business model, the margin of private stockist should be capped over a fixed percentage of notified prices.

- f. At the stockyard, the stock supervisor should verify the authenticity of online payment receipt before issuing the transit pass. The loading of sand should be monitored electronically and all transporting vehicles should pass through an electronically monitored weighbridge. g. Real-time data capture for transportation*

Para 1.2.13.2 Level 2 - Transportation monitoring

To make transportation monitoring effective and useful, all the sand carrying vehicles (tractors/ trucks) should be registered with the department and GPS equipment should be installed in all the sand carrying vehicles. Weighbridges with CCTV should be installed at all the stockyards, active reaches to ascertain the exact quantity of sand being transported in the vehicle. Check posts with CCTV cameras should be established near all major consumption centres to check if all the transporting vehicles are carrying a valid transport permit. The transport permit generated should contain the security features mentioned under section 5.11 so that one permit cannot be re-used by generating photocopies of the permit.

Para 1.2.13.3 Level 3 - End consumer monitoring/ bulk consumer

For end consumer monitoring, a customer grievance redressal center should be established to enquire about the grievances faced by the sand consumers. The telephone number of the call center should be advertised so that it reaches the general public through which anyone in the State can register his/her complain related to the sand, be it in terms of price or any other grievance. Additionally, profiles of customers should be analyzed such as the delivery of sand at the same address, usage pattern and its comparison with the estimated usage, as mentioned in purpose, etc. Further, surprise checking

should be conducted by the district level committee staff as per instructions of the monitoring agency.

Para 1.2.13.4 Level 4 - Indirect monitoring

Indirect monitoring can be done by determining sand consumption through the quantum of cement sales in the State, as the sale of cement is quite organized and data is easily available at the State level and district levels for the same. From district-wise cement consumption, the further trend of sand consumption can be derived. Any anomalies in the sand consumption/demand can be analyzed further.

Note: *The above monitoring mechanism is just a suggestion and the States may visit Andhra Pradesh and Telangana to study the monitoring mechanism in greater detail.*

It is suggested that State Government may consult with concern department of State of Telangana and Tamil Nadu to have better understanding on their experience and knowledge in adopting best sand mining enforcement provisions and monitoring practices and frame their own regulatory regime and monitoring framework. The framework of monitoring should essential include online sale & purchase of River Bed Material/ Auction of leases, Sand from rivers and other sources, online monitoring of excavation, storage and transportation of mineral for control of illegal mining.

The respective State Governments shall develop the online Sale & Purchase System after defining the model viz. Under market model or Controlled market prices model. The level of monitoring needs to be defined and guidelines need to be finalized by the respective State Governments as per their requirement with due consideration of suggestive guideline in this document. These all measure will help in curbing illegal mining.

7.0 Recommendations of High Power Committee:

A high power committee (HPC) was constituted by Hon'ble National Green Tribunal to assess the status of illegal mining the stretch of River Yamuna, under the chairmanship of Secretary, Ministry of Environment Forest & Climate Change. The committee after exhaustive field survey and interaction with stakeholders and having surprise visits submitted a comprehensive report on river sand mining along with certain recommendations on enforcement requirements and monitoring essentials. The same is provided in the following section for consideration of monitoring / regulatory authority to adopt applicable provisions in their monitoring framework and also to ensure that the infrastructural requirements recommended by the HPC are put in use at all locations including the lease area.

7.1 Recommendations of High Power Committee (HPC)

The following recommendation of the High Power Committee shall be considered while framing the monitoring mechanism by the State Government.

- i.* Project Proponent must ensure that following security features are included in the Transport Permission/Permits (TP) so that duplicate/fraudulent/forged TPs for transport, not accounted for in the IT-based system, is not possible.:
 - (a) Printed on Indian Bank Association (IBA) approved
 - (b) Magnetic Ink Character Recognition Code (MICR) paper;
 - (c) Unique Barcode;
 - (d) Unique Quick Response Code (QR);
 - (e) Fugitive Ink Background;
 - (f) Invisible Ink Mark;
 - (g) Void Pantograph;
 - (h) Watermark.

- ii. Project Proponent must ensure that CCTV camera, Personal Computer (PC) or laptop, Internet Connection, Power Back up, access control of mine lease site; and arrangement for weight or approximation of weight of mined out mineral on basis of volume of the trailer of vehicle used at mine lease site are available.
- iii. The PP has to enter the destination, distance between plot and destination, vehicle number etc in the system. After scanning, unique bar code number, invoice date time and validity date-time are generated by the software which gets printed individually on each TP. Validity of TP is calculated based on the distance between plot and destination. After validity time is over the TP stands invalid.
- iv. The officers involved in monitoring should be provided with mobile application and/or bar code scanners using which the TP can be checked anywhere on road. As soon as the bar or QR code on TP gets scanned through using the mobile application and/or scanner or vehicle number is entered into the application or sent by SMS to a predefined number, all details of TP such as plot details, vehicle details, validity time, etc. should be fetched from the server. This means if anything is re-written on TP and attempt is made to reuse the same, it can be traced immediately. Various reports can be generated using the system showing daily lifting reports and user performance report. This way the vehicles carrying sand can be tracked from source to destination.
- v. The facility to fetch details using mobile app, website and SMS may be made available to the general public as well. However, they shall not be allowed to stop the vehicles to check the transportation. The only option that they should have is to check vehicle numbers of the passing vehicle in the mobile app or SMS for the validity of the pass. The only result that should be available to them should be if the vehicle carrying sand has a

valid permit at the relevant point of time or not. If the citizen finds that the vehicle doesn't have such a permit, as ascertained from mobile app or website or SMS, he should alert local authorities, who shall then take further action as per the law.

- vi. In case, the vehicle break-down, the validity of Transport Permit or Receipt shall be extended by sending SMS by the driver in specific format to report the breakdown of the vehicle. The server will register this information and register the breakdown. The State can also establish a call center, which can register breakdowns of such vehicles and extend the validity period. The subsequent restart of the vehicle also should be similarly reported to the server/call center.
- vii. The route of the vehicle from source to destination shall be tracked through the system using checkpoints, Radio-frequency identification (RFID) tags, and Global Positioning System (GPS) tracking.
- viii. The system shall enable the Authorities to develop a periodic report on different parameters like daily lifting report, vehicle log/ history, lifting against allocation, and total lifting. The system can be used to generate auto mails/SMS. This will enable the District Collector / Magistrate and other authorities to get all the relevant details and will enable the authority to block the scanning facility of any site found to be indulged in irregularity. Whenever any authority intercepts any vehicle transporting illegal sand, it shall get registered on the server and shall be mandatory for the officer to fill in the report on action taken. Every intercepted vehicle should be tracked.
- ix. It is necessary to prevent any truck/vehicle from transporting sand out of the identified plot bypassing the strong IT enabled system. Therefore, at each of the sand plot, the following additional measures should be taken.

- (a) There shall be one entry and exit point provided for trucks/vehicles. The said entry point should have facilities as mentioned above. In case, it is necessary to have more than one entry/exit points, all such points shall have checkpoints with facilities as mentioned above. All other possible ways of entry/exit should be closed using barriers like compound, trench, etc. All provisions shall be made to not make it possible for any vehicle to enter or exit without entry into the computerized system.
- (b) All such points should have 24X7 CCTV coverage, the footage of which should be made available online to the district administration. In cases, where sufficient internet bandwidth is not available, it may be deposited with the district administration on a weekly basis. If possible, the entry/exit points should have boom barriers which will record the vehicles entering and exiting the plot.

8.0 GENERAL APPROACH TO SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING

8.1 Pre-requisite for starting sand mining operation

- i)** All district to prepare a comprehensive mining plan for the district as per the provision of District Survey Report. These reports shall be put on the website of District Administration. No mining shall be allowed in the area which has not been identified in the comprehensive mining plan of the District.
- ii)** Replenishment study should be conducted on regular basis.
- iii)** All potential rivers mining zone/area shall be identified and put for auction with proper geo-tagged details by the auctioning authority concerned.
- iv)** The latitude and longitude of each mining lease shall be clearly mentioned in Letter of Intent issued to the potential mine lease. Such information shall be provided on the website of the district administration.
- v)** The provision of these guidelines shall be considered while identifying the potential stretches /locations and boundaries of the leases for the minable area.
- vi)** The Lol holder shall seek Environmental Clearance as per the provision of EIA Notification, and the regulatory authority shall ensure that the provision suggested in "Sustainable Sand Mining & Management 2016" and in this documents, as applicable are part of the clearance conditions.
- vii)** There shall be no river bed mining operation allowed in monsoon

period. The period as defined by IMD Nagpur for each state shall be adhered with.

- viii) The monitoring infrastructures including weighbridge and adequate fencing of the lease area, CCTV, Transport permits, etc, as suggested in this document shall be ensured in order to reduce unrecorded dispatch.
- ix) Regular monitoring of mined minerals and its transportation and storage shall be ensured and all information shall be captured at centralized database so that easy tracking of illegal material can be done.
- x) Annual audit of each mining lease shall be carried out wherein three independent member of repute, nominated by District administration shall also participate.

8.2 Mining of Sand from Agricultural Fields

This practice is prevalent in Haryana; to ensure that mining from outside doesn't affect rivers, no mining is permitted in an area up to a width of 100 meters from the active edge of embankments or distance prescribed by Irrigation department whichever is critical. The top layer of soil varying between 1 and 2 meters is removed and stacked separately and thereafter the sand deposit which maybe 10-15 meter deep is mined. After removing the sand layer up to a maximum depth of 09 meters or the maximum mineable minerals, as permitted by competent authority. The topsoil stacked is spread out on the field and the same is brought under the cultivation. Though the level of this land (mined out area) is lowered to the depth of the excavation and in initial years of cultivation the productivity is low, but the productivity of the fields improves with continued cultivation and addition of organic manure in the field. In Haryana, some leases are of large area

(ranging from 1000 hectare to 2000 hectare) and agricultural fields and river bed both are included in the same lease for mining.

The following recommendations should be kept in mind for mining in such leases:

1. Mining of sand in such mine leases will require environment clearance.
2. The lease should be of sand mining either from the agricultural field or river. In the same lease, both types of area should not be included.
3. The sand mining from the agricultural field is being done in Haryana for a long time and it can be done in a more sustainable manner without adverse impact on agricultural productivity if proper environmental safeguards are taken.
4. The slope of mining area adjacent to agricultural fields should be proper (preferably 45 degree) and adequate gap (minimum 10 feet) be left from adjacent agricultural field to avoid erosion and scouring.

The provision for sand mining in agricultural field may be permitted, whenever replenishment of sand occurs due to natural phenomena.

Permission may also be granted by competent authority (District administration) for excavation of sand/Soil from agricultural fields, after due diligence of this prevailing condition in order to avoid any unacceptable impact on the environment and nearby livelihood from agriculture provided such objective of such excavation mining of Soil/Sand in limited increase the productivity of sand agricultural field.

9.0 MONITORING MECHANISM

9.1 Illegal Mining

The Hon'ble Supreme Court in its Judgment dated 2.08.2017 in W.P 114 of 2014 in the matter of Common Cause Vs Union of India & Ors, inter-alia passed the following:

Para 128. *The simple reason for not accepting this interpretation is that Rule 2(ii-a) of the MCR was inserted by a notification dated 26th July 2012 while we are concerned with an earlier period. That apart, as mentioned above, the holder of a mining lease is required to adhere to the terms of the mining scheme, the mining plan and the mining lease as well as the statutes such as the EPA, the FCA, the Water (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1974 and the Air (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1981. If any mining operation is conducted in violation of any of these requirements, then that mining operation is illegal or unlawful. Any extraction of a mineral through an illegal or unlawful mining operation would become illegally or unlawfully extracted mineral."*

In view of above Judgement, any mining activities which are not governed under the provision of Environment (Protection) Act, 1985, The Water (Prevention & Control of Pollution Act, 1974, The Air (Prevention & Control of Pollution) Act, 1981, Forest Conservation Act-1980, Wildlife Protection Act - 1972, shall be considered as illegal mining within the provision of section 21(5) of Mines and Minerals (Development & Regulation) Act, 1957 (MMDR Act) and the concerned authority shall take necessary action within the provision of MMDR Act.

As per the provision of 23(C) of MMDR Act, the State Government is empowered to make rules for preventing illegal mining, and transportation

& storage of Illegal minerals. All such mining which qualifies under illegal, shall be dealt with in the provision of MMDR Act by the concern authorities.

State Pollution Control Board (SPCB) is the nodal authority in the State for dealing with cases related to pollution or environment management coming under the purview of the Water (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1974, the Air (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1981 and the Environment Protection Act 1986. SPCB shall initiate appropriate action under the provision of these acts for non-compliance or violation of the provisions.

9.2 Environmental Damage due to illegal mining

The environmental damages incurred or resulting due to illegal mining shall be assessed by a committee constituted by District Administration having expertise from relevant fields, and also having independent representation of locals and State Pollution Control Board. Guidelines for assessment of ecological damages prescribed by the State Government or Concerned Pollution Control Boards or any other authority shall be applicable and compensation as fixed shall be paid by the project proponent, in light of Hon'ble National Green Tribunal orders.

9.3 Monitoring of Mining near Inter-district or inter-state boundary

There are situations where bifurcated river becomes district boundaries or state boundaries in such situation it is difficult to assess the mining potential, or to have close monitoring and enforcement of the regulatory provision. Such challenges have been identified and dealt with in SSMG-2016. However, in the absence of any standardized procedure, the monitoring has not been effectively practiced. This has been highlighted by the High Power Committee constituted by NGT in the matter pertaining to illegal mining.

The districts/state sharing the boundary shall constitute the combined task force for monitoring of mined materials, mining activity and also should actively participate in the preparation of DSR by providing appropriate inputs. In such cases, the draft DSR so prepared shall be put up for public consultation in both the districts through respective district administration website.

The task force shall meet every quarter to reconcile the data collected during the period and identify any gap/ lapses based on the outcome of such meeting. The respective district shall take action/ corrective measures. Effort shall be made for real-time data sharing between both the district.

The task –force shall include essentially the representative of respective districts from the mining department, transport department, regional office of SPCB concerned and a reputed citizen nominated by district administration. The Taskforce shall be headed by officer not less than ADM rank and quarterly outcome shall be submitted to District administration.

In addition to the above, there is a need for strict surveillance, particularly at night. The State of Gujarat has already initiated a program called '*Trinetra*' for night surveillance by using night-vision drones to control illegal mining incidents. This program is giving satisfactory results. Such type of system may also be developed by each State within a reasonable time.

A typical standard operating procedure for assessing illegal mining by the committee constituted shall, but not limited to, include the steps given in the following table. However, the process of assessing can be modified based on site-specific conditions and any deviation shall be recorded in the report with proper justification.

Suggestive standard Practice for assessing illegal mining

Step 1	The assessment team should collect the information and documents prescribed in the Pre-Requisite section.
Step 2	The assessment team should verify the applicability/validity of statutes under EPA-1986, Air and Water Act, MMDR 1957, State Mines and Mineral Rules, etc.
Step 3	Field visit should be conducted for identification of mining lease area (in hectare) and boundary pillar constructed to indicate the same.
Step 4	With the help of GPS instrument, the team should assess the area where any extraction or mining have been carried out on the day of visit and calculate the mined-out area in a hectare.
Step 5	If available, the team may avail the use of latest satellite images for calculating the total mined out area.
Step 6	The team should verify the Ground / Surface Level (in meter above MSL) of at least 04 highest points in or around the area where mining has been done. The Ground/surface level will then be computed based on averaging of 04 highest points verified by the team.
Step 7	With the help of Depth Measurement kit or any depth measuring instruments, the depth should be measured for at least 04 points in the mined-out area. For computing, the depth, averaging of the value obtained at 04 points should be done.
Step 8	Verification of compliance conditions of Environmental Clearance and Consent to operate, mining methodology under Mining Plan
Step 9	Identification of vulnerable impacts observed on the field and non-compliance of conditions of Environmental Clearance and Consent to Operate.

Step 10	Field Survey for identification, monitoring and verification of ecological species based on the information available and documents mentioned in the Pre-requisite section.
Step 11	Preparation of inventory of machinery used/observed on the field (optional)
Step 12	Preparation of inventory of hydraulic structures observed on the field (optional)
Step 13	Water sampling for assessment of water quality including physical and biological parameters. (optional)
Step 14	Reconciliation collation of data/information and compilation to maintain violation.
Step 15	Identification of restoration plan and computation of cost of the restoration plan.

9.4 Monitoring Mechanism

A uniform monitoring mechanism is required to assess the regulatory provision in quantitative terms, with robust institutional and legal framework. Based on past experience and suggestions available, the following requirements are suggested for defining a mechanism for monitoring of mining activities which will help in identification of mining which is operating either illegally or are violating the regulatory provisions. Some suggestion will facilitate direct or indirect information to help in such an assessment.

1. All precaution shall be taken to ensure that the water stream flows unhindered and process of Natural river meandering doesn't get affected due to mining activity.
2. River mining from outside shall not affect rivers, no mining shall be permitted in an area up to a width of 100 meters from the active edge of embankments or distance prescribed by the Irrigation department.

3. The mining from the area outside river bed shall be permitted subject to the condition that a safety margin of two meters (2 m) shall be maintained above the groundwater table while undertaking mining and no mining operation shall be permissible below this level unless specific permission is obtained from the Competent Authority. Further, the mining should not exceed nine-meter (9 m) at any point in time.
4. Survey shall be carried out for identifying the stretches having habitation of freshwater turtles or turtle nesting zones. Similarly, stretches shall be identified for other species of significant importance to the river ecosystem. Such stretch with adequate buffer distance shall be declared as no-mining zone and no mining shall be permitted. The regulatory authority as defined for granting Environmental Clearance, while considering the application of issuance of ToR and/or EC for the adjacent block (to non-mining zone) of mining shall take due precaution and impose requisite conditions to safeguard the interest of such species of importance.
5. District administration shall provide detailed information on its website about the sand mines in its district for public information, with an objective to extend all information in public domain so that the citizens are aware of the mining activities and can also report to the district administration on any deviation observed. Appropriate feedback and its redressal mechanism shall also be made operational. The details shall include, but not limited to, lease area, geo-coordinates of lease area and mineable area, transport routes, permitted capacity, regulatory conditions for operation including mining, environmental and social commitments etc.

6. A website needs to be maintain to track the movement of centralised sand mining and a Centralised server system should be made to manage the data related to sand mining across India.
7. The mineral concession holders shall maintain electronic weighbridges at the appropriate location identified by the district mining officer, in order to ensure that all mined minerals from that particular mine are accounted for before the material is dispatched from the mine. The weighing bridge shall have the provision of CCTV camera and all dispatch from the mine shall be accounted for.
8. The mineral movement shall be monitored and controlled through the use of transit permit with security features like printing on IBA approved MICR papers, Unique bar/QR, fugitive ink background, invisible ink mark, void pantographs and watermarks papers or through use of RFID tagged transit permits and IT /IT-enabled services. Such monitoring system shall be created and made operationalised by State Mining department and district level mining officer shall be responsible for ensuring that all legal and operational mines are connected and providing the requisite information on the system. Regular check and associated report shall be submitted to DLTF and uploaded on the website.
9. State Government shall constitute a District Level Task Force (DLTF) under the Chairmanship of Deputy Commissioner/District Magistrate/Collector with Superintendents of Police and other related senior functionaries (District Forest Officer, District transport officer, Regional officer- SPCBs, Senior Officer of Irrigation Department, District Mining Officer) with one/two independent member nominated by the Commissioner concerned. The independent member shall be retired government officials/teacher or ex-serviceman or ex-judiciary member.

The DLTF shall keep regular watch over the mining activities and movement of minerals in the district. The DLTF shall have its regular meeting, preferably every month to reconcile the information from the mining activity, and other observations made during the month and take appropriate corrective and remedial action, which may include a recommendation for revoking mining lease or environmental clearance. The DLTF may constitute an independent committee of the expert to assess the environmental or ecological damage caused due to illegal mining and recommend recovery of environmental compensation from the miner's concern. The recommendation may also include action under the provision of E(P) Act, 1986.

10. The area not identified for mining due to restriction or otherwise are also to be monitored on a regular basis by the DLTF. Any observations of mining activity from the restricted area shall be reported and corrective measures shall be initiated on an urgent basis by the DLTF.
11. The dispatch routes shall be defined in the Environmental Clearance and shall be avoided through densely habituated area and the increase in the number of vehicle movement on the road shall be in agreement with the IRC guidelines / carrying capacity of the road. The alternate and dedicated route shall be explored and preferred for movement of mining to avoid inconvenience to the local habitat. The mining production capacity, by volume/weight, shall be governed by total permissible dispatch calculated based on the carrying capacity of dispatch link roads and accordingly, the production should be regulated.
12. The movement of minerals shall be reconciled with the data collected from the mines and various Naka/check posts. Other measures may also include a general survey of the potential mineable area in the district

which has not been leased/auctioned or permitted for mining due to regulatory or other reasons.

13. The location and number of check post requirement shall be reviewed by DLTF on a regular basis so that appropriate changes in location/number could be made as per the requirement. Such review shall be carried out on a regular basis for the district on inter-state boundary or district providing multiple passages between two districts of different states.
14. The district administration shall compile the information from their district of the permitted and legal mined out minerals and other details and share such information and intelligence with the officials of the adjoining district (Inter or/and Intra State) for reconciliation. The information shall include the area of operation, permissible quantity, mined out minerals (production) the permitted route etc., and other observations, especially where the mine lease boundary is congruent with the district boundary. Such coordination meeting shall be held on a quarterly basis, alternatively in two district headquarters or any other site in two districts decided mutually by the District Magistrate.
15. The mining department shall include submission of an annual environmental audit report as one of the conditions in the mining lease agreement. The annual audit for each river bed mining lease shall be carried out and the audit report shall be uploaded on the website of district administration. The audit shall be carried out by an independent team of 3 members nominated by District Collector/Magistrate/Commissioner comprising of Ex-Serviceman, Ex-Government officials of repute, Professor or Person having experience of mining/environment. The guidelines and method of the audit shall reflect adequately the monitor-able parameters and output and reflect

the compliance status with respect to the conditions imposed by the regulatory authorities including conditions of Environmental clearance.

16. The in-situ and ex-situ environmental mitigative measures stipulated as EMP, CER, CSR and other environmental and safety conditions in mines including the welfare of labours shall properly reflect in the audit report.

9.5 Suggestive additional requirements are

i. The requirement at the Mine Lease Site:

- a. Small Size Plot (Up to 5 hectares): Android Based Smart Phone.
- b. Large Size Plots (More than 5 hectares): CCTV camera, Personal Computer (PC), Internet Connection, Power Back up.
- c. Access control of mine lease site.
- d. Arrangement for weight or approximation of the weight of mined out mineral on the basis of the volume of the trailer of vehicle used.

ii. Scanning of Transport Permit or Receipt and Uploading on Server:

- a. Website: Scanning of receipt on mining site can be done through barcode scanner and computer using the software;
- b. Android Application: Scanning on mining site can be done using Android Application using a smartphone. It will require internet availability on SIM card;
- c. SMS: Transport Permit or Receipt shall be uploaded on the server even by sending SMS through mobile. Once Transport Permit or Receipt get uploaded, a unique invoice code gets generated with its validity period.

iii. Proposed working of the system:

The State Mining Department should print the Transport Permit or Receipt with security features and issue them to the mining leaseholder through the District Collector. Once these Transport Permits or Receipts are issued, they would be uploaded on the server against that mine lease area. Each receipt should be preferable with pre-fixed quantity, so the total quantity gets determined for the receipts issued. When the

Transport Permit or Receipt barcode gets scanned and invoice is generated, that particular barcode gets used and its validity time is recorded on the server. So all the details of transporting of mined out material can be captured on the server and the Transport Permit or Receipt cannot be reused.

iv. Checking On Route:

The staff deployed for the purpose of checking of vehicles carrying mined mineral should be in a position to check the validity of Transport Permit or Receipt by scanning them using the website, Android Application and SMS.

v. Breakdown of Vehicle:

In case the vehicle break-down, the validity of Transport Permit or Receipt shall be extended by sending SMS by the driver in specific format to report the breakdown of the vehicle. The server will register this information and register the breakdown. The State can also establish a call center, which can register breakdowns of such vehicles and extend the validity period. The subsequent restart of the vehicle also should be similarly reported to the server or call center.

vi. Tracking of Vehicles:

The route of the vehicle from source to destination can be tracked through the system using checkpoints, RFID Tags, and GPS tracking.

vii. Alerts or Report Generation and Action Review:

The system will enable the authorities to develop a periodic report on different parameters like daily lifting report, vehicle log or history, lifting against allocation, and total lifting. The system can be used to generate auto mails or SMS. This will enable the District Collector or District Magistrate to get all the relevant details and shall enable the authority to block the scanning facility of any site found to be indulged in irregularity. Whenever any authority intercepts any vehicle transporting illegal sand, it shall get registered on the server and shall be mandatory for the officer to fill in the report on action taken. Every intercepted vehicle shall be tracked.

The monitoring of mined out mineral, environmental clearance conditions and enforcement of Environment Management Plan will be ensured by the regulatory authority and the State Pollution Control Board or Committee. The monitoring arrangements envisaged above shall be put in place. The monitoring of enforcement of environmental clearance conditions shall be done by the Central Pollution Control Board, Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change and the agency nominated by the Ministry for the purpose.

Some of the State has followed the SSMMG-2016 and has also improvised or customized on the provisions given therein, and are successfully in operation. Salient provision adopted at different stages of sand mining in the state of Tamil Nadu is given as **Annexure VIII**.

9.6 Actions against illegal excavation and transport

Solapur district administration in Maharashtra had adopted a multi-pronged strategy to penalize the persons involved in illegal excavation and transport which resulted in a significant increase in revenue earned by the state. Following rules and procedures as mentioned in these guidelines will add to the costs of PP. Those involved in illegal activities are not required to bear these costs and this will make their supply in the market cheaper (though illegal). This will put the players running their business by following rules and procedures laid down by the government to disadvantage as far as the selling price is considered. Therefore, it is necessary to come down heavily on those involved in illegal excavation/transport, so that there is no incentive for players to abide by the rules.

The following action may be taken to achieve this deterrence against illegal business:

1. The action should be taken under all legal options available simultaneously. Thus, after identifying the case of illegal excavation, storage and/or transport of minor minerals (including sand), fine should be levied as per the land revenue laws/code(s) of the state. In addition, FIR should be lodged in the police station under relevant sections of law including sec 379 IPC. In addition, action under the Motor Vehicle Act, 1989 and relevant rules should initiate to cancel/suspend the driving license of the driver and permit of the vehicle. Further, action should be initiated under provisions in the Income Tax Act, 1961 for unaccounted income and under the Central Goods and Services Act, 2017 for non-payment of GST. (Earlier this was done under the state act pertaining to Value Added Tax/Sales Tax). Habitual offenders should also be taken up under local state laws for externment and/or preventive action. It is clarified that as per law, it is possible to take all actions under various laws

simultaneously for one offence. What is prohibited in law is an action under the same law for the same act more than once.

2. The action should be taken against all persons responsible. Often, there is a tendency to penalize only the drivers of the vehicles. The mafia of illegal mining and transport is much bigger and drivers are only one part of the system. It is necessary to identify all those involved in the offence. It is usually not possible to reach the place of excavation without creating a motorable pathway up to the same through land which may be private land. Such role of such landowners needs to be looked into for each offence and proceeded against simultaneously. Further, the role of vehicle owners needs to be probed. Role of the person who allowed his land to be used for illegal excavation and storage should also be examined. Lastly, the person who purchases such sand should also be probed. The legal proceedings stated above needs to be initiated against all of these together. An attempt should be made to fix the financial responsibility in joint and several ways so that recovery is easier.
3. There may be discretion available in law about the extent of the penalty to be levied. If such discretion is very wide, then it is advisable that guidelines may be laid down to reduce such discretion in law for levying penalties. For example, in Maharashtra, Land Revenue Code, fine of any amount of penalty up to thrice the value of the sand can be levied. Solapur district administration had instructed Tahsildars and SDMs not to use discretion and levy the fine of three times the value. Availability of discretion makes junior level functionaries susceptible to pressures and it may also lead to corrupt practices.
4. It is emphasized that actions, as stated above, are most important to ensure that the IT-based system works. If these exemplary actions are not taken against everyone, it shall create a strong disincentive to those

involved in legal excavation and transportation. For IT-based (or any other) legal system to work, it is necessary to ensure that illegal system stops working altogether.

Annexure-I**Details of Sand/M-Sand Sources****a) Rivers:**

River Name/M-Sand Plant	Total Stretch of River (in KM)	Type of River (Perennial or Non-Perennial)

b) De-Siltation Location: (Lakes/Ponds/Dams etc.)

Name of Reservoir/Dams	Maintain/Controlled by State Govt./PSU etc.	Location	District	Tehsil	Village	Size(Ha)

c) Patta Lands/Khatedari Land:

Owner	Sy. No	Area (Ha)	District	Tehsil	Village	Agricultural Land (Yes/No)

d) M-Sand Plants:

Plant Name	Owner	District	Tehsil	Village	Geo-location	Quantity Tonnes/Annum

Note: For inclusion of M-Sand Plant/Patta Land in DSR the plant/landowners need to submit the request to the Mining Department with complete details. Inclusion in DSR does not give them the right to operate the M-Sand Plant/Sand Mining lease.

Annexure-II**List of Potential Mining Leases (existing & proposed)****Rivers**

River Details	Lease Details	Area (in Ha)	Distance (in KM) from PA/BR/WC/	Distance from Forest Area (in KM)	Mining leases within 500 meters (if yes cluster area)	Total excavation in Tonnes /Annum considering digging depth max as 3 meters	Mineral to be mined (Sand/ Bajri/ RBM etc.)	Existing / Proposed

Patta Lands/Khatedari Land: (existing & proposed)

Owner	Sy. No	Area	District	Tehsil	Village	Total Reserve (MT)	Total Mineral to be mined (MT)	Existing /Proposed

De-Siltation Location: (Lakes/Ponds/Dams etc.) (Existing & proposed)

Name of Reservoir /Dams	Maintain /Controlled by State Govt./PSU etc.	Location	District	Tehsil	Village	Size (Ha)	Quantity MT / Year	Existing /Proposed

M-Sand Plants :(existing & proposed)

Plant Name	Owner	District	Tehsil	Village	Geo-location	Quantity Tonnes/Annum	Existing/Proposed

Annexure-III**Cluster & Contiguous Cluster details****Clusters:**

River Name	Cluster No.	Lease No	Location (Riverbed / Patta Land)	Village	Area (in Ha)	Total Excavation (Ton)	Total Mineral Excavation (Ton)

Contiguous Clusters:

River Name	Contiguous Cluster No.	Cluster No	Number of leases in the cluster	Location (Riverbed / Patta Land)	Distance between clusters	Village	Area of Cluster (Ha)	Total Mineral Excavation (Ton)

Annexure-IV**Transportation Routes for individual leases and leases in Cluster**

Lease No	Transportation Route No	Number of tipper s /day of lease	Number of tipper s /day of all the lease on route	Length of Route in KM	Type of Road (Black Topped/ unpaved)	Recommendation for road (Black Topped/ unpaved)	The road will be Constructed by Govt/ Lease Owner	Route Map & Location

Cluster No	Transportation Route No	Number of tipper s /day of cluster	Number of tipper s /day of all the clusters on route	Length of Route in KM	Type of Road (Black Topped/ unpaved)	Recommendation for road (Black Topped/ unpaved)	The road will be Constructed by Govt/ Lease Owner	Route Map & Location

Enforcement & Monitoring Guidelines for Sand Mining

Annexure-V**Final List of Potential Mining Leases (existing & proposed)****Rivers**

River Details	Lease Details	Area (in Ha)	Distance (in KM) from PA/BR/WC/	Distance from Forest Area (in KM)	Mining leases within 500 meters (if yes cluster area)	Total excavation in (MT/Yr) (Mine depth max as 3 m)	Mineral to be mined (Sand/Bajri/RBM etc.)	Existing /Proposed

Patta Lands/Khatedari Land: (existing & proposed)

Owner	Sy. No	Area	District	Tehsil	Village	Total Reserve (MT)	Total Mineral to be mined (MT)	Existing /Proposed

De-Siltation Location: (Lakes/Ponds/Dams etc.) (Existing & proposed)

Name of Reservoir/ Dams	Maintain/ Controlled by State Govt./PSU etc.	Location	Distt.	Tehsil	Village	Size(Ha)	Quantity MT/Year	Existing/ Proposed

M-Sand Plants :(existing & proposed)

Plant Name	Owner	District	Tehsil	Village	Geo-location	Quantity MT/Annum	Existing/Proposed

Annexure-VI**Final List of Cluster & Contiguous Cluster****Clusters:**

River Name	Cluster No.	Lease No	Location (Riverbed / Patta Land)	Village	Area (in Ha)	Total Excavation (Ton)	Total Mineral Excavation (Ton)

Contiguous Clusters:

River Name	Contiguous Cluster No.	Cluster No	Number of leases in the cluster	Location (Riverbed /Patta Land)	Distance between clusters	Village	Area of Cluster (in Ha)	Total Mineral Excavation (Ton)

Annexure-VII**Final Transportation Routes for individual leases and leases in Cluster**

Lease No	Transportation Route No	Number of tippers /day of lease	Number of tippers /day of all the lease on route	Length of Route in KM	Type of Road (Black Topped/unpaved)	Recommendation for road(Black Topped/unpaved)	The road will be Constructed by Govt/Lease Owner	Route Map & Location

Cluster No	Transportation Route No	Number of tippers /day of cluster	Number of tippers /day of all the clusters on route	Length of Route in KM	Type of Road (Black Topped/unpaved)	Recommendation for road(Black Topped/unpaved)	The road will be Constructed by Govt/Lease Owner	Route Map & Location

Annexure VIII**Salient provision for sand mining in the state of Tamil Nadu****STEPS TO BE FOLLOWED BEFORE EXECUTION:**

- The state as a policy should endeavor to have single authority/agency responsible for all river sand mining in the state with an objective to ease the gap in demand and supply and accordingly, take necessary measures including planning, monitoring of mined material and its transport, and to curb illegal mining and sale of materials.
- The prospective site for sand quarry may be identified based on the availability of adequate sand deposits along the river beds, which hinders the free flow of water and results in flooding during monsoon seasons. Emphasis may be given to such quarry sites which is more viable for replenishment.
- A detailed study may be conducted by engaging expert from reputed Institutions to identify prospective sand reaches, assessment of the impact of sand quarrying on the Ground Water Table and water availability, conduct bore log details and study the social and environmental aspects. The generic requirement for replenishment study is to be followed.
- Once the site is identified for prospective sand quarry site based on the detailed replenishment study, the concerned department shall submit the proposal with the geo-tagged boundary of the proposed mining Precise Area Proposal to the District Collector for approval.
- A joint inspection may be carried out by the RDO/Sub-Collector, Assistant/Deputy Director,

- Executive Engineer, TWAD Board and the PWD officials to consider the various factors before giving consent to the proposal.
- The RDO concerned along with Revenue officials may verify the revenue records of the proposed sand quarrying area and give the NOC.
- The AD/DD Mines may verify the presence of permanent structures such as tower line, bridge, monuments if any, in the vicinity of the proposed mining site as per Tamil Nadu Minor Mineral Concession Rules, 1959 (As per Rule 36 " there shall be no quarrying of sand in any river bed or adjoining area or any other area which is located within 500 meter radial distance from the location of any bridge, water supply system, infiltration well or pumping installation of any of the local bodies or Central or State Government Department or the Tamil Nadu Water Supply and Drainage Board head works or any area identified for locating water supply schemes by any of the above mentioned Government Department or other bodies" and " The distance of 50 meter shall be measured in the case of railway, reservoir or canal horizontally from the outer toe of the bank or the outer edge of the cutting, as the case may be "). Also, the availability of minerals may be cross verified with the available DSR.
- The TWAD officials may verify the drinking water schemes located nearby the proposed quarry site and the minimum distance required as per statutory norms.
- Based on the feasibility report of the joint inspection by the Revenue, Tamil Nadu Water Supply and Drainage Board and Mining officials/experts, the District Collector may give consent for the Precise Area proposal.

- After getting Precise Area approval, a detailed Mining Plan and sketch shall be prepared by the Executive Engineer, PWD using the services of a NABET accredited consultant who holds the pivotal role in the preparation of mining plan. Due responsibility will be expected on the concerned consultant in the mining plan preparation taking care of adhering to all mining rules, existing as on date. The mining plan shall contain the details of quantity to be excavated, the period of mining, method of excavation, deployment of required machinery, Environment Management Plan (EMP), proposed number of laborers to be deployed and Conceptual Mining Plan, as per Rule 41 of TNMMC Rules 1959. It is also the duty of the consultant to give the safe distance of 50 m or twice the bank height from the toe of the riverbank, whichever is higher and fixing the Geo coordinates for boundaries using DGPS instruments.
- The concerned Executive Engineer, PWD shall submit the Mining Plan prepared by the NABET accredited consultant to the concerned Assistant/Deputy Director, Department of Geology and Mines for approval, as per Rule 42 of TNMMC 1959. After scrutiny, the Assistant/Deputy Director, Department of Geology will present the Mining plan before the State Level Environment Impact Assessment Authority (SEIAA) for granting Environmental Clearance.
- The Executive Engineer, PWD shall prepare Form I and Pre-feasibility report with the help of the consultant and submit to SEIAA for an area less than 50 Ha. or to the Ministry of Environment and Forest and Climate Change (MoEF&CC) for the area more than 50 Ha.
- The State Expert Appraisal Committee (SEAC) under SEIAA, consisting of experts from renowned fields such as Mines, Environment, Sociology etc. shall conduct a site inspection of the proposed sand quarry site and after intense scrutiny, may recommend the proposal to SEIAA for approval.

- SEIAA shall grant Environmental Clearance for the sand quarry proposal after analyzing all the statutory provisions and based on the recommendation of the SEAC.
- The Environmental Clearance shall be informed to the public with basic details through advertisement in at least two widely circulated local newspapers with at least one in the vernacular language of the locality, within 7 days of the receipt of the clearance.
- On receipt of the Environmental Clearance, the Executive Engineer, PWD shall apply for Consent to Establish (CTE), from the Tamil Nadu Pollution Control Board as per the Air and Water Act, to enter upon the sand quarry site and commence the preliminary works such as construction of temporary sheds, bio-toilets, formation of biodegradable road using sugar cane leaves etc., drilling of bore wells etc. as per the statutory requirements. After all the preliminary works are completed, the Executive Engineer, PWD shall apply for the Consent to Operate (CTO) from the Tamil Nadu Pollution Control Board. Earmarking boundary of the identified land site through the concrete posts along with red flags need to be established.
- On receipt of the CTO, the Executive Engineer, PWD shall request the consent of the District Collector to commence the quarries. The District Collector shall request the Taluk Level Task Force comprising of Tahsildar, Inspector of Police, Officials from the Departments of Geology and Mining, Transport and Forest, Assistant Engineer, PWD and the Village Administrative Officer concerned, to verify the compliance of all preconditions mentioned in the Environmental Clearance and grant necessary permission to start the functioning of new sand quarries.

II. STEPS TO BE FOLLOWED DURING EXECUTION:

- Before the commencement of mining operations, the depth of sand quarrying needs to be measured accurately using Advanced technology and new gadgets like Total Stations, Global Positioning System (GPS) instruments etc. The Total Station and GPS instruments also need to be calibrated before measurement. Both the traditional and modern techniques may be infused in the right blend to get an accurate measure of the depth. A clear contour map (0.25m interval) of the levels within 2Km (one Km U/s and one Km D/s) needs to be prepared and submitted to both the Project Director, Sand Quarrying Operations and all the Monitoring Committee members. The depth of sand quarrying shall be restricted to 1 m from the theoretical/design bed level.
- The mining area must be demarcated at a minimum distance of at least 50 m away from the river embankment on either side. The boundaries of the quarries may be fixed with reference to the existing survey marks from the survey fields adjacent to the river. Sand quarrying lease area shall be demarcated on the ground with pucca stone or concrete pillars to show the present natural bed level and the depth of mining allowed.
- Modern techniques such as drone survey may be adopted to assess the depth and quantity of the mined area. Boundary pillars shall be erected at an interval of 50 m each on all four sides of the sand quarry site with red flags on every pillar and also in site pillars. The levels of shoal height, river bed height and depth to be excavated up to one meter downwards shall be marked in the pillars to avoid any deviation from the approved depth of excavation.
- It shall be ensured that no sand quarrying of any type is undertaken within 50m of the distance mentioned in the proposal (whichever is higher)

from both the banks of the river to control and avoid erosion of river banks.

- Temporary access roads or Katcha roads shall be formed between the banks of the river and the mining area with locally available bio-degradable materials such as sugarcane waste (bagasse), hay, etc.
- Proper entry and exit point for the movement of loading vehicles in and out of the sand quarry site shall be carefully located taking into consideration the habitations/settlements in the area.
- To monitor the groundwater level during sand quarrying operations, a network of existing wells may be established around the sand quarrying area and new piezometers must be installed at all sand quarry sites. Monitoring of Ground Water Quality in the vicinity (one Km radius from the sand quarrying site) shall be carried out once in two months.
- Periodic Monitoring (at least four times in a year – pre-monsoon, Monsoon, Post monsoon and winter) once in each season shall be carried out by PWD and the data thus collected may be sent regularly to SEIAA/TNPCB. If at any stage, it is observed that the groundwater table is getting depleted due to the mining activity; necessary corrective measures shall be carried out, which includes immediate stopping of mining.
- Similar to the Baseline studies for data on water, soil and air etc., that is being done before the sand quarrying operations, the air and water quality may be checked periodically by Tamil Nadu Pollution Control Board to ensure that no pollution is caused due to Sand Quarrying Operations. 10. Safety gadgets such as earplugs, goggles, respiratory

devices, luminescent vests etc. may be provided to the workers at the sand quarry site.

- First aid kit with all essentials shall be kept ready at all quarry/depot site, in case of any emergency.
- To prevent air pollution due to the dust during sand quarrying operations and safeguard the persons in the sand quarry and depot site, constant water sprinkling on the pathways and dust prone areas may be done. The sand loaded vehicles are to be covered with a tarpaulin before moving out of the quarries/depots.
- Suitable depots shall be located in the vicinity of the sand quarry site to facilitate the sale of sand. While selecting the site for depots, it must be ensured that the site is within 25 km from the sand quarry site and has an area of around 10-15 Acres with parking facilities and proper entry and exit for smooth movement of the vehicles. The depot site shall preferably be a Government poramboke land, foreshore area of tank bund etc., near an NH/SH/MDR/ODR. In the absence of any Government land in the vicinity, private Patta land may be leased out and rent fixed as per the approved Government rates applicable therein.
- Permission must be obtained from the Electricity Board for power supply to operate the CCTV cameras at sand quarry site and depots.
- Minimum of two CCTV cameras, one each at the entry and exit point and one PTZ camera may be installed at all quarries/depots to monitor illegality if any taking place in the sand quarry/depot.
- To ensure uninterrupted seamless live streaming of videos from the surveillance cameras, a high-speed Internet Lease Line connection may

be made available at all quarries/depots. Arrangements may also be made for online monitoring of the sand quarrying, Centre for Assessing Real-Time Sand Mining (CARS) that could be located at the office of the Project Director in Chennai.

- The live streaming of the videos shall be monitored at a Centralised control room and the data shall be stored in the Server for future references. A robust Customer Care may also be functional 24 x 7 at the Control Room, to redress the grievance of the public.
- Drop gates shall be installed at the entry and exit points of all quarries/depots.
- Display boards shall be erected in local vernacular language at sand quarry/depot site, in the nearest village by which sand transportation will be carried and at the entrance of the village road from the main road.
- The concerned authority of PWD shall call for e-tender to select the contractors for loading/raising of sand at the quarry site, transporting contractors to transport sand from the quarry site to depots and loading/maintenance contractors at depots.
- Sand shall be loaded in the quarries in the PWD tendered GPS fitted vehicles and online transmit permit shall be issued by the competent authorities in PWD to the transporting vehicles to transport sand from the quarry to depots.
- On the arrival of the sand shunting vehicles from quarry to the depot, an online authentication shall be done to confirm the arrival of the

appropriate quantity of sand mentioned in the transport permit into the depot.

- The loading of sand from the depots shall be carried out by booking through the online portal "www.tnsand.in" as done presently. Online transit passes will also be issued to the loaded vehicles which could be verified by using an Android app "TNSand Investigator".
- During operation of the quarries, the PWD officers shall ensure that at no point in time, the depth of quarry exceeds 1 m depth from the river bed level and quarrying is done in a uniform manner over the entire mining area to avoid overexploitation and formation of pits at fixed places.
- Proper registers may be maintained at the entry and exit points of the sand quarry/depot sites and a Loading Register may be made available during inspection. An Inspection Register and a Complaint Register may be made available at the sand quarry/depot site.
- The functioning time of quarries/depots shall be from 7.00 AM to 6.00 PM. No sand transporting vehicles to be parked inside the quarry/depot site during night time.
- A copy of the approved mining plan may be kept at the quarry site for ready reference.
- Photographs and sketch showing the pit dimensions, depth etc. may be recorded every week and maintained in the sand quarry. The Executive Engineer, PWD may inspect each sand quarry on a weekly basis and ensure that mining activities are taking place within the approved boundaries/depth.

- The sand quarrying activity shall be stopped if the entire quantity is quarried even before the expiry of the sand quarry lease period and the same shall be mentioned by the PWD authorities.
- The Taluk Level Taskforce shall inspect the quarries every fortnight, as per G.O. (Ms) No. 135 of Industries Department, dated 13.11.2009 and record the status of the compliance in the registers maintained at the sand quarry site.
- The Taluk Level Task Force has to submit its inspection report to the District Level Task Force chaired by the District Collector. The District Level Task Force has to be convened every month to discuss cases of illegal quarrying. An Environmentalist from reputed State / Central Institution and a legal expert on environmental matters may be part of the District Level Task Force. The District Level Task Force shall also dispose of the petitions on illegal sand quarrying after due enquiry and scrutiny, and pass orders within a period of two months from the date of receipt of the complaint. If any person is aggrieved with the orders passed by the District Level Task Force, an appeal may be preferred before the Appellate Forum.
- The District Collector shall take necessary steps to strengthen the existing District and Taluk Level Committees and act on the complaints received, if any, on illegal sand quarrying and take strict remedial measures to rectify the same in a time-bound manner. The District Level Task Force may send its monthly report to the Appellate Forum formed as per G.O. (Ms) No. 27 of Industries Dept. dated 17.02.2015.
- The Appellate Forum shall hear the appeals filed against the orders passed by the District Level Task Force. The Appellate Forum comprises

of the Secretaries to Government from Industries Department, Public Works Department, Revenue Department, Environment and Forests Department, Commissioner of Geology and Mining and an Expert from a reputed Government Institution.

- The Appellate Forum may convene once in 2 months to deliberate on the reports from the District Level Task Force and shall dispose of the appeals made by the petitioners aggrieved with the orders passed by the District Level Task Force.
- Periodical Capacity building and sensitization of PWD officials on the environmental and legal aspects of sand quarrying may be made mandatory. Continuous training and awareness programs shall be scheduled and conducted by IIT/Anna University for the PWD staff to keep themselves aware of the best practices in this field. It may be ensured that the enforcement officials from the Departments of Revenue, Police, Geology and Mining and Transport in the districts where quarries are situated are given adequate training and capacity building on their duties and responsibilities with respect to inspection of sand quarries and sand transporting vehicles at specified time intervals.
- No blasting shall be carried out any point in time.
- It is the obligation of the Public Works Department to run the quarry in an environmentally friendly and ecologically sustainable manner.
- The Hon'ble High Court-appointed Monitoring Committee shall inspect the sand quarries periodically and submit a report to the Hon'ble High Court.

- The PWD should explore/take necessary steps to introduce Mining Surveillance System (MSS) in line with MSS evolved by the Indian Bureau of Mines and Bhaskaracharya Institute for Space Applications and Geo-informatics (BISAG).

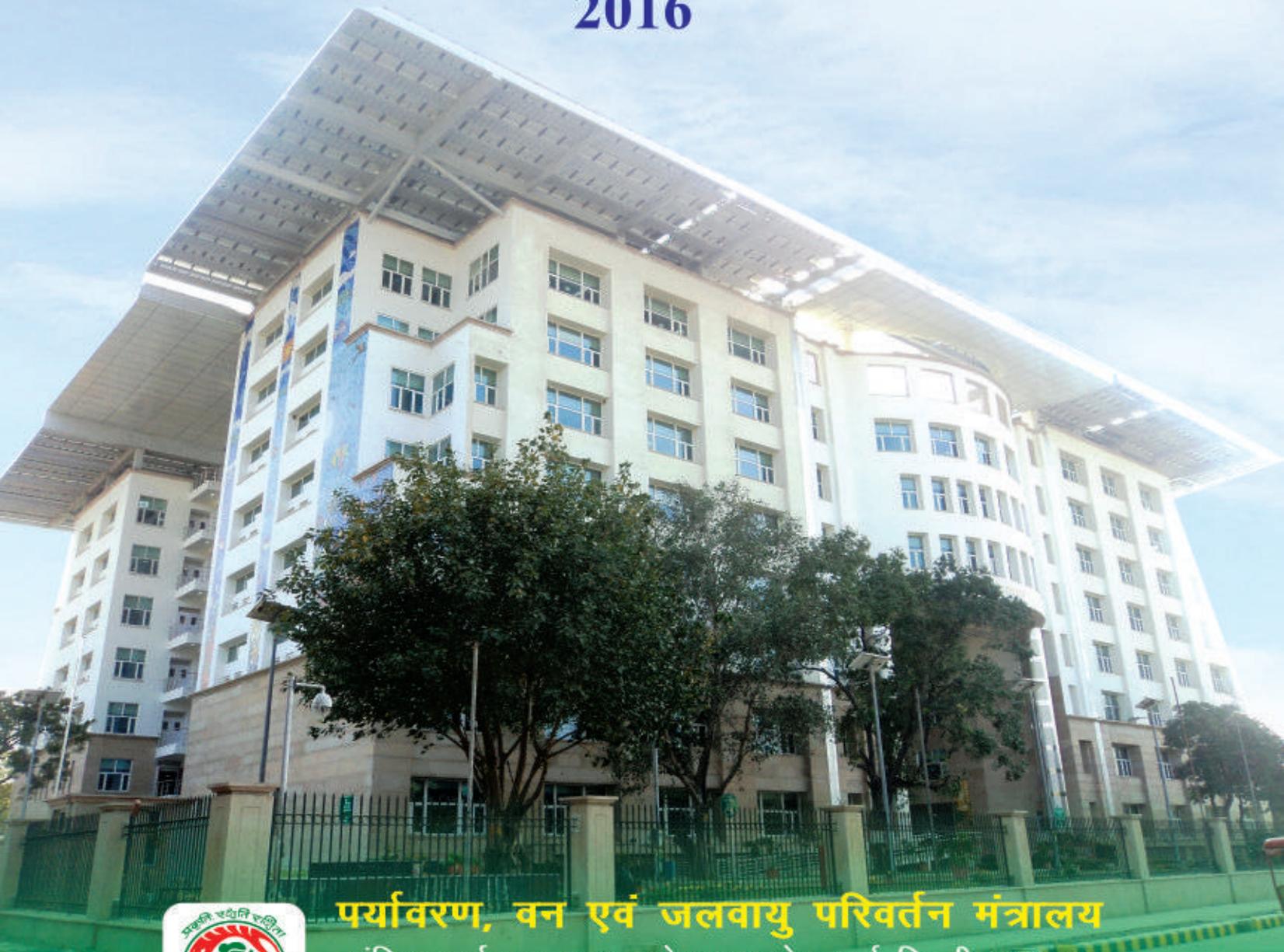
III. STEPS TO BE FOLLOWED AFTER EXECUTION:

- A Judicious mine closure plan may be formulated once the quarry is closed after exhaustion of the quantity of sand.
- Reclamation works may be factored into the contract agreement and strict monitoring by the PWD officials may be initiated to scrupulously follow up the mine closure plan.
- It may be ensured that the total quantity of sand permitted in the EC shall not be exceeded in any case.
- After the exhaustion of the quantity of sand, the sheds constructed at the quarry site may be removed. All the roads and pathways may be levelled so that there is no obstruction for the normal flow in the river.
- All the records/registers may be carefully maintained by the PWD for future reference.



सत्यमेव जयते

SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES 2016



पर्यावरण, वन एवं जलवायु परिवर्तन मंत्रालय

इंदिरा पर्यावरण भवन, जोर बाग रोड, नई दिल्ली-110 003

Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change

Indira Paryavaran Bhavan, Jor Bagh Road, New Delhi - 110 003

www.moef.nic.in

Acknowledgment

The Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines 2016, has been prepared after extensive consultation with the States and stakeholders over a period of last one year. The Guideline assimilates the knowledge and experience of stakeholder. The main objective of the Guidelines is to ensure sustainable sand mining and environment friendly management practices in order to restore and maintain the ecology of river and other sand sources. The team of the officers of Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change who have worked for preparing these Guidelines comprised of following:

1. Shri Manoj Kumar Singh, Joint Secretary
2. Dr. U. Sridharan, Scientist 'F'
3. Dr. R.B. Lal, Scientist 'D'
4. Dr. Sonu Singh, Scientist 'D'



SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Sl.No.	CONTENTS	Page
01	Foreword	03
	Preface	05
02	Executive Summary	07
03	Introduction	08
04	Need for Policy Guidelines	09
05	Objective of the Guidelines	09
06	The Effect of Sand and Gravel Mining	11
07	General Approach to Sustainable Sand and Gravel Mining	14
08	The World Scenario	16
09	Indian Scenario	18
10	The Price Elasticity for Demand of Sand	19
11	Process of Sediment Transport	19
12	Sustainable Sand and Gravel Mining Guidelines	21
13	The Structure of District Survey Report	24
14	Management Plan	28
15	Marine Sand Mining and Impact on Marine Biodiversity	33
16	Reducing Consumption of Sand	34
17	The Report of the Committee headed by Secretary, MoEF - 2010	35
18	Regime of Law and Administrative Orders Relating to Mining of Minor Minerals	40
19	The Issues and Management of Mining In Cluster	49
20	Management of Sand Deposited after Flood on Agricultural Field of Farmers	58
21	Mining of Sand from Agricultural Field	60
22	Customary Rights on Sand Mining	60
23	Desilting of Reservoirs / Barrages / Annecuts / Lakes / Canals	61
24	Mining Plan	62
25	Evaluating The Impact Of Sand Mining	62
26	Monitoring System for Sustainable Sand Mining	64
27	Administrative Structure for Environmental Clearance and Ensuring Compliance of EC Conditions	67
28	Exemption of Certain Cases from being Considered as Mining and Requirement of Environmental Clearance	72
29	Standard Environmental Conditions for Sand Mining	73



APPENDIX

Sl.No.	CONTENTS	Page
30	Table - 1: Revenue from Sand Mining in State / UT	79
31	Table - 2: Number of Mining Leases in State	80
32	Table - 3: Average Size of Sand Mining Leases in State / UT: 2014-15	81
33	Table - 4: Average Period of Sand Mining Leases in State / UT	82
34	Table - 5: Common Method and Practice of Sand Mining in the State / UT	83
35	Table - 6: Suggestions / Recommendations from states for Environmentally Sustainable Sand Mining	85
36	Table - 7: Best Practice of Sand Mining adopted in District / State / UT	93
37	Table - 8: Status of Promulgation of Rule on Sand Mining in the State / UT	95
38	Table - 9: Normal Dates of Onset and withdrawal of South-West Monsoon	97



प्रकाश जावडेकर
Prakash Javadekar



राज्य मंत्री (स्वतंत्र प्रभार)
MINISTER OF STATE (INDEPENDENT CHARGE)
पर्यावरण, वन एवं जलवायु परिवर्तन
ENVIRONMENT, FOREST & CLIMATE CHANGE
भारत सरकार / GOVERNMENT OF INDIA



FOREWORD

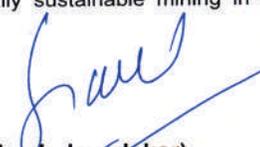
Environmental Protection and Sustainable Development have been the cornerstones of the policies and procedures governing the industrial and other developmental activities in India. The Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change has taken several policy initiatives and enacted environmental and pollution control legislations to prevent indiscriminate exploitation of natural resources and to promote integration of environmental concerns in developmental projects. One such initiative is the Notification on Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) of developmental projects issued on 14th September, 2006 under the provisions of Environment (Protection) Act, 1986, making EIA mandatory for certain categories of developmental projects.

Another land mark decision has been taken with the new notifications dated 15.01.2016 and 20.01.2016 on mining of minor minerals and constitution of District Level Environment Impact Assessment Authority and District Level Environment Appraisal Committee. This will ensure environmentally sustainable mining especially for sand and gravel under close supervision of district authorities. Use of information technology and information technology enabled services for scientific monitoring of mining and transportation of mined out material is another important feature of above notification.

Sand and gravel are one of the most important construction materials. Ensuring their availability is vital for the development of the infrastructure in the country. There are different sources of sand and gravel, the most important among them is the river. As the requirement of these construction materials is on rise, they also are very vital for the health, physical character of the river and the different important functions of the river. The extraction of sand and gravel from the river bodies has to be regulated and done with adoption of required environmental safeguards.

In view of evolving scenario in industry and development sector, My Ministry has prepared a "Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines". The Guidelines *inter-alia* focus on preparation of District Survey Report; Management Plan; Marine Sand Mining and Impact on Marine Biodiversity; Issues and Management of Mining in Cluster; Management of Sand Deposited after Flood on Agricultural Field of Farmers; Mining of Sand from Agricultural Field; Monitoring System for Sustainable Sand Mining using Information Technology System; Creation of District Level Environment Impact Assessment Authority (DEIAA) and District Level Expert Appraisal Committee (DEAC) for granting Environment Clearance for Mining of Minor Minerals; Exemption of certain cases for requirement of Environment Clearance and Standard Environmental Conditions for Sustainable Sand Mining.

The Guidelines will help the Departments of Mines and Geology, State Pollution Control Boards/Committees, Industries, Regulators, Authorities and various Stakeholders to ensure environmentally sustainable mining in the Country.


(Prakash Javadekar)

Paryavaran Bhawan, Jor Bagh Road, New Delhi-110 003
Tel.: 011-24695136, 24695132, Fax : 011-24695329

 www.youtube.com/prakashjavadekar  www.facebook.com/prakashjavadekar
 www.twitter.com/prakashjavadekar e-mail : mefcc@gov.in
website : www.prakashjavadekar.com





अशोक लवासा
ASHOK LAVASA, IAS



सचिव
भारत सरकार
पर्यावरण, वन एवं जलवायु परिवर्तन मंत्रालय
Secretary
Government of India
Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change



PREFACE

Sand is naturally occurring granular material composed of finely divided rock and mineral particles. Sand and gravel together known as aggregate, represent the highest volume of raw material used on earth. The mining of aggregate has been continuing for many years. Now the mining of aggregates has reached a level threatening the environment and ecosystem besides also reaching a level of scarcity that would threaten the economy. It is recommended that sand and aggregate mining, and quarrying should be done only after sound scientific assessment and adopting best practices to limit the impact on the environment.

The main objectives of the Guidelines, inter-alia, includes to ensure that sand and gravel mining is done in environmentally sustainable and socially responsible manner; availability of adequate quantity of aggregate in sustainable manner; improve the effectiveness of monitoring of mining and transportation of mined out material; conservation of the river equilibrium and its natural environment by protection and restoration of the ecological system; avoid aggradation at the downstream reach especially those with hydraulic structures such as jetties, water intakes etc.; to ensure the rivers are protected from bank and bed erosion beyond its stable profile; no obstruction to the river flow, water transport and restoring the riparian rights and in-stream habitats; to avoid pollution of river water leading to water quality deterioration; to prevent depletion of ground water reserves due to excessive draining out of ground water; and streamlining the process for grant of environmental clearance (EC) for sustainable mining.

The recommendations for management of sustainable sand extraction are the key objectives of the Guidelines. Emphasis is given to the setting up of monitoring plans that will provide data on profile changes and sediment transport capacity to enable the authorities to evaluate the long-term effect of the mining activities both upstream and downstream of sand extraction sites. Special emphasis is given on monitoring of the mined out material, which is key to the success of environment management plan. So use of IT and IT enabled services for effective monitoring of the quantity of mined out material and transportation along with process reengineering has been made a part of the Guideline. The Guidelines propose delegation of responsibility and authority to the cutting edge level i.e. the District Environment Impact Assessment Authority along with streamlining the process of impact assessment, environment management plan and environment clearance in cluster situation.



New Delhi
Date: 15-03-2016

Ashok Lavasa
(Ashok Lavasa)

इंदिरा पर्यावरण भवन, जोर बाग रोड़, नई दिल्ली-110 003 फोन : (011) 24695262, 24695265, फॅक्स : (011) 24695270
INDIRA PARYAVARAN BHAWAN, JOR BAGH ROAD, NEW DELHI-110 003 Ph. : (011) 24695262, 2465265, Fax : (011) 24695270
E-mail : secy-moef@nic.in, alavasa@nic.in, Website : moef.gov.in





EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The sand and gravel are one of the most important construction materials. Ensuring their availability is vital for the development of the infrastructure in the country. There are different sources of sand and gravel, the most important among them is the river. As the requirement of these construction materials is on rise, they also are very vital for the health, physical character of the river and the different important functions of the river. The extraction of sand and gravel from the river bodies has to be regulated and done with adoption of required environmental safeguards.

For making available these resources, a mapping of these resources at the district level, identification of appropriate sites for extraction, appraisal of the extraction process, putting in place the required environmental safeguards, and rigorous monitoring of the volume of extracted material is required to ensure sustainability of the entire process.

The district is the unit of administration which is best placed to do the mapping of these resources, adopt the best environmental practices for extraction of these materials and monitor its extraction and movement. The large number of leases which are awarded, the scattered geographical location of the availability of these materials and decentralized requirement and usage of the sand and aggregates also places districts in a unique position to play a vital role in adoption of environmental safeguards needed for sustainable extraction of river sand and gravel.

Recommendations for management of sustainable sand extraction are the key objective of the Guidelines. Emphasis is given to the setting up of monitoring plans that will provide data on profile changes and sediment transport capacity to enable the authorities to evaluate the long-term effect of the mining activities both upstream and downstream of sand extraction sites.

Special emphasis is given on monitoring of the mined out material, which is key to the success of environment management plan. So use of IT and IT enabled services for effective monitoring of the quantity of mined out material and transportation along with process reengineering has been made a part of the Guidelines. The Guidelines proposes delegation of responsibility and authority to the cutting edge level i.e. the District Environment Impact Assessment Authority along with streamlining the process of impact assessment, environment management plan and environment clearance in cluster situation.

Promotion of manufactured sand, artificial sand and alternative technologies in construction materials and processes are also required for reducing the dependence and demand on naturally occurring sand and gravel. Development of slag sand, sand from stone chips and there certification under BIS is an important step in this direction.



INTRODUCTION

Sustainable Development is built on three pillars - environmental, social and economic. Sustainable development cannot be achieved if the environment is protected but poverty is prevalent in a significant part of the population. Similarly, sustainable development cannot be achieved through inappropriate economic growth, if it undermines the environment in which people and businesses exist. These Guidelines support that fundamental concept, promoting environmental protection, limiting negative physiological, hydrological and social impacts underpinning sustainable economic growth.

Sand and gravel have long been used as aggregate for construction of roads and buildings. Today, the demand for these materials continues to rise. In India, the main sources of sand are river flood plain, coastal sand, paleo channel sand, and sand from agricultural fields.

River sand mining is a common practice as habitation concentrates along the rivers and the mining locations are preferred near the markets or along the transportation route, for reducing the transportation cost. River sand mining can damage private and public properties as well as aquatic habitats. Excessive removal of sand may significantly distort the natural equilibrium of a stream channel.

Removing sediment from the active channel bed in a river interrupts the continuity of sediment transport through the river system, disrupting the sediment mass balance in the river downstream and induces channel adjustments (usually incision) extending considerable distances (commonly one kilometer or more) beyond the extraction site.

The magnitude of the impact basically depends on the magnitudes of the extraction relative to bed load sediment supply and transport through the reach. Implementation of the principles and processes outlined in these Guidelines will limit the negative externalities of sand and gravel mining.



NEED FOR POLICY GUIDELINES

Sand is naturally occurring granular material composed of finely divided rock and mineral particles between 150 micron to 4.75 mm in diameter (IS 383-1970). Sand is formed due to weathering of rocks due to mechanical forces. In the process the weathered rocks forms gravel and then sand.

Sand and gravel together known as aggregate, represent the highest volume of raw material used on earth after water. The mining of aggregate has been continuing for many years. Now the mining of aggregates has reached a level threatening the environment and ecosystem besides also reaching a level of scarcity that would threaten the economy. It is recommended that sand & aggregate mining, and quarrying should be done only after sound scientific assessment and adopting best practices to limit the impact on the environment.

It is also felt that the greater use of substitute material (Manufactured Sand, artificial sand etc.) & construction technology, and sustainable use of the resource could drastically reduce adverse impact of mining on the environment.

OBJECTIVE OF THE GUIDELINES

The Guideliness has been based on the following principles:

- Uncontrolled sand mining is not sustainable.
- Compliance with present and future legislation and regulations on the subject is mandatory and not voluntary.
- Each lease holder should be given the opportunity to self-regulate to the extent that it can demonstrate compliance with legislation and regulations.
- Where self- regulation fails to deliver compliance with legislation and regulations, increased formal enforcement and monitoring should be implemented with punitive measures applied in line with the legal framework.
- There is a need to protect the environment and the right of the population to live in clean and safe surroundings, with the need to use natural resources in a way that will make a positive and sustainable contribution to the economy.

The main objectives of the Guidelines

- To ensure that sand and gravel mining is done in environmentally sustainable and socially responsible manner.
- To ensure availability of adequate quantity of aggregate in sustainable manner.
- To improve the effectiveness of monitoring of mining and transportation of mined out material.



- Ensure conservation of the river equilibrium and its natural environment by protection and restoration of the ecological system.
- Avoid aggradation at the downstream reach especially those with hydraulic structures such as jetties, water intakes etc.
- Ensure that the rivers are protected from bank and bed erosion beyond its stable profile.
- No obstruction to the river flow, water transport and restoring the riparian rights and in-stream habitats.
- Avoid pollution of river water leading to water quality deterioration.
- To prevent depletion of ground water reserves due to excessive draining out of ground water.
- To prevent ground water pollution by prohibiting sand mining on fissures where it works as filter prior to ground water recharge.
- To maintain the river equilibrium with the application of sediment transport principles in determining the locations, period and quantity to be extracted.
- Streamlining and simplifying the process for grant of environmental clearance (EC) for sustainable mining.



THE EFFECT OF SAND AND GRAVEL MINING

Mining within or near riverbed has a direct impact on the stream's physical characteristics, such as channel geometry, bed elevation, substratum composition and stability, in-stream roughness of the bed, flow velocity, discharge capacity, sediment transport capacity, turbidity, temperature etc. Alteration or modification of the above attributes may cause hazardous impact on ecological equilibrium of riverine regime. This may also cause adverse impact on in-stream biota and riparian habitats. This disturbance may also cause changes in channel configuration and flow-paths.

The effects of sand and gravel mining are as follows:

- a) Extraction of bed material in excess of replenishment by transport from upstream causes the bed to lower (degrade) upstream and downstream of the site of removal.
- b) In-stream habitat is impacted by increase in river gradient, suspended load, sediment transport and sediment deposition. Excessive sediment deposition for replenishment increases turbidity which prevents penetration of light required for photosynthesis and reduces food availability of aquatic fauna.
- c) Riparian habitat including vegetative cover on and adjacent to the river banks it controls erosion, provide nutrient inputs into the stream and prevents intrusion of pollutants in the stream through runoff. Bank erosion and change of morphology of the river can destroy the riparian vegetative cover.
- d) Bed degradation are responsible for channel shifting, causing loss of properties and degradation of landscape, it can also undermine bridge supports, pipe lines or other structures.
- e) Degradation may change the morphology of the river bed, which constitutes one aspect of the aquatic habitat.
- f) Degradation can deplete the entire depth of gravelly bed material, exposing other substrates that may underlie the gravel, which could in turn affect the quality of aquatic habitat. Lowering of ground water table in the flood plain because of lowering of riverbed level as well as river water level takes place because of extraction and draining out of excessive ground water from the adjacent areas. So, if a floodplain aquifer drains to the stream, groundwater levels can be lowered as a result of bed degradation.
- g) Lowering of the water table can destroy riparian vegetation.
- h) Excessive pumping of ground water in the process of mining in abandoned channels depletes ground water causing scarcity of irrigation and drinking water. In extreme cases it may create ground fissures and subsidence in adjacent areas.
- i) Flooding is reduced as bed elevations and flood heights decrease, reducing hazard for human occupancy of floodplains and the possibility of damage to engineering works.
- j) The supply of overbank sediments to floodplains is reduced as flood heights decrease.
- k) An un-scientific and unregulated sand and gravel mining tends to increase channel bank



scouring and erosion. This causes a large degree of meandering of rivers and sometimes it could be in kms.

- l) Rapid bed degradation may induce bank collapse and erosion by increasing the heights of banks.
- m) Polluting ground water by reducing the thickness of the filter material especially if mining is taking place at top of recharge fissures.
- n) Choking of sand layer which acts as filter for ingress of ground water from river by dumping of finer material, compaction of filter zone due to movement of heavy vehicles. It also reduces the permeability and porosity of the filter material.
- o) Removal of gravel from bars may cause downstream bars to erode if they subsequently receive less bed material than is carried downstream from them by fluvial transport.
- p) Ecological effects on bird nesting, fish migration, angling, etc.
- q) Indiscrete mining activities lead to increased concentration of suspended sediment in the river which in turn causes siltation of water resources projects.
- r) Un-scientific and unregulated sand and gravel mining leads to the severe health hazards like air quality degradation and dust fog.
- s) Direct destruction from heavy equipment operation; discharges from equipment and refueling.
- t) Biosecurity and pest risks.
- u) Impacts on coastal processes.

The other deleterious impacts of indiscrete mining include

Loss of riparian habitat resulting from direct removal of vegetation along the stream bank to facilitate the use of a dragline or through the process of lowering the water table, bank undercutting, and channel incision. The physical composition and stability of substrates are altered as a result of in-stream mining and most of these physical effects may exacerbate sediment entrainment in the channel. Furthermore, the process of in-stream mining and gravel washing produces fine sediments under all flow conditions, resulting in a deposition of fine sediment in riffles as well as other habitats at low discharge. Excess sediment is considered the greatest pollutant in waters and constitutes one of the major environmental factors in the degradation of stream fisheries.

However, in-stream mining may contribute additional sediment to downstream reaches due to the disruption of substrate stability. Once sediment enters the stream, it is best to let natural geomorphological and hydrological processes reach a dynamic equilibrium, rather than further exacerbating the situation by additional disturbance.

**All other things being equal:**

- a) Extracting gravel from an excavation that does not penetrate the water table and is located away from an active stream channel should cause little or no change to the natural hydrological processes unless the stream captures the pit during periods of flooding.
- b) In-stream extraction of gravel from below the water level of a stream generally causes more changes to the natural hydrologic processes than limiting extraction to a reference point above the water level.
- c) In-stream extraction of gravel below the deepest part of the channel (the thalweg) generally causes more changes to the natural hydrological processes than limiting extraction to a reference point above the thalweg.
- d) Excavating sand and gravel from a small straight channel with a narrow floodplain generally will have a greater impact on the natural hydrological processes than excavations on a braided channel with a wide floodplain.
- e) Extracting sand and gravel from a large river or stream will generally create less impact than extracting the same amount of material from a smaller river or stream.
- f) Over-extraction of gravel can destabilise channels and banks, and/or affect the ecologic functioning of rivers particularly if undertaken at the wrong time, or in the wrong place, or in a way that damages the river bed or margins.



GENERAL APPROACH TO SUSTAINABLE SAND AND GRAVEL MINING

Following considerations should be kept in mind for sand / gravel mining:

- a) Parts of the river reach that experience deposition or aggradation shall be identified first. The Lease holder/ Environmental Clearance holder may be allowed to extract the sand and gravel deposit in these locations to manage aggradation problem.
- b) The distance between sites for sand and gravel mining shall depend on the replenishment rate of the river. Sediment rating curve for the potential sites shall be developed and checked against the extracted volumes of sand and gravel.
- c) Sand and gravel may be extracted across the entire active channel during the dry season.
- d) Abandoned stream channels on terrace and inactive floodplains be preferred rather than active channels and their deltas and flood plains. Stream should not be diverted to form inactive channel.
- e) Layers of sand and gravel which could be removed from the river bed shall depend on the width of the river and replenishment rate of the river.
- f) Sand and gravel shall not be allowed to be extracted where erosion may occur, such as at the concave bank.
- g) Segments of braided river system should be used preferably falling within the lateral migration area of the river regime that enhances the feasibility of sediment replenishment.
- h) Sand and gravel shall not be extracted within 200 to 500 meter from any crucial hydraulic structure such as pumping station, water intakes, and bridges. The exact distance should be ascertained by the local authorities based on local situation. The cross-section survey should cover a minimum distance of 1.0 km upstream and 1.0 km downstream of the potential reach for extraction. The sediment sampling should include the bed material and bed material load before, during and after extraction period. Develop a sediment rating curve at the upstream end of the potential reach using the surveyed cross-section. Using the historical or gauged flow rating curve, determine the suitable period of high flow that can replenish the extracted volume. Calculate the extraction volume based on the sediment rating curve and high flow period after determining the allowable mining depth.
- i) Sand and gravel could be extracted from the downstream of the sand bar at river bends. Retaining the upstream one to two thirds of the bar and riparian vegetation is accepted as a method to promote channel stability.



- j) Flood discharge capacity of the river could be maintained in areas where there are significant flood hazard to existing structures or infrastructure. Sand and gravel mining may be allowed to maintain the natural flow capacity based on surveyed cross- section history.
- k) Alternatively, off-channel or floodplain extraction is recommended to allow rivers to replenish the quantity taken out during mining.
- l) The Piedmont Zone (Bhabhar area) particularly in the Himalayan foothills, where riverbed material is mined, this sandy-gravelly track constitutes excellent conduits and holds the greater potential for ground water recharge. Mining in such areas should be preferred in locations selected away from the channel bank stretches.
- m) Mining depth should be restricted to 3 meter and distance from the bank should be 3 meter or 10 percent of the river width whichever less.
- n) The borrow area should preferably be located on the river side of the proposed embankment, because they get silted up in course of time. For low embankment less than 6 m in height, borrow area should not be selected within 25 m from the toe/heel of the embankment. In case of higher embankment the distance should not be less than 50 m. In order to obviate development of flow parallel to embankment, cross bars of width eight times the depth of borrow pits spaced 50 to 60 meters centre-to-centre should be left in the borrow pits.
- o) Demarcation of mining area with pillars and geo-referencing should be done prior to start of mining.



THE WORLD SCENARIO

Sand and gravel are mined world-wide and account for the largest volume of solid material extracted globally. Formed by erosive processes over thousands of years, they are now being extracted at a rate far greater than their renewal. Furthermore, the volume being extracted is having a major impact on rivers, deltas and coastal and marine ecosystems, resulting in loss of land through river or coastal erosion, lowering of the water table and decrease in the amount of sediment supply. Despite the colossal quantities of sand and gravel being used, increasing dependence on them and the significant impact that their extraction has on the environment, this issue needs far better attention and awareness.

Globally, between 47 and 59 billion tonnes of material is mined every year of which sand and gravel, known as aggregates, account for both the largest share (from 68% to 85%) and the fastest growth in extraction increase. Although more sand and gravel are mined than any other material, reliable data on their extraction is not available. The absence of global data on aggregates mining makes environmental assessment very difficult and has contributed to the lack of awareness about this issue. One way to estimate the global use of aggregates indirectly is through the production of cement for concrete (concrete is made with cement, water, sand and gravel). The production of cement is reported by 150 countries and it reached 3.7 billion tonnes in 2012 (USGS, 2013a). For each tonne of cement, the building industry needs about six to seven times more tonnes of sand and gravel (USGS, 2013b). Thus, the world's use of aggregates for concrete can be estimated at 25.9 billion tonnes a year for 2012 alone.

Added to this are all the aggregates used in land reclamation, shoreline developments and road embankments (for which the global statistics are unavailable), added to this is the 180 million tonnes of sand used in industry (USGS, 2012). Aggregates also contribute to 90% of asphalt pavements and 80% of concrete roads (Robinson and Brown, 2002). Taking all these estimates into account, a conservative estimate for the world consumption of aggregates exceeds 40 billion tonnes a year.

This large quantity of material cannot be extracted and used without a significant impact on the environment. Extraction has an impact on biodiversity, water turbidity, water table levels and landscape and on climate through carbon dioxide emissions from transportation. There are also socio-economic, cultural and even political consequences. In some extreme cases, the mining of marine aggregates has changed international boundaries, such as through the disappearance of sand islands in Indonesia (New York Times, 2010; Guerin, 2003).

The impacts of sand mining can be mainly categorized as follows:



IMPACTS ON	DESCRIPTION
Biodiversity	Impacts on related ecosystems (for example; fisheries)
Land losses	Both inland and coastal through erosion
Hydrological functions	Change in water flows, flood regulation and marine currents
Water supply	Through lowering of the water table and pollution
Infrastructures	Damage to bridges, river embankments and coastal infrastructures
Climate	Directly through transport emissions
Landscape	Coastal erosion, changes in deltaic structures, quarries, pollution of rivers
Extreme events	Decline of protection against extreme events (flood, drought, storm surge)

World over sand was until recently extracted in land quarries and riverbeds; however, a shift to marine and coastal aggregates mining has occurred due to the decline of inland resources. River and marine aggregates remain the main sources for building and land reclamation. For concrete, in-stream gravel requires less processing and produces high-quality material while marine aggregate needs to be thoroughly washed to remove salt. If the chloride is not removed from marine aggregate, a structure built with it might collapse after few decades due to corrosion of steel reinforced structures. Most sand from deserts cannot be used for concrete and land reclaiming, as the wind erosion process forms round grains that do not bind well.



INDIAN SCENARIO

The data on consumption of sand and aggregate in country is not available with any source. It can be derived indirectly from the usage of cement, construction of roads and stowing of mines. The trend for aggregates extraction can be estimated using cement production as a proxy.

Cement production has multiplied three-fold in the last 20 years from 1.37 billion tonnes of cement in 1994 to 3.7 billion tonnes in 2012 (USGS, 2013a) mainly as a result of rapid economic growth in Asia (UNEP and CSIRO, 2011). Five countries: China (58%), India (6.75%), the United States (2%), Brazil and Turkey - produce 70% of the world's cement (USGS, 2013c). The consumption of cement is expected to reach 324 million tonnes, which equates to use of 2.2 billion tonnes of aggregates. This is in addition to sand and aggregates used in stowing of mines, industry and other allied usage.

In India the main sources of sand are:

- (a) River (riverbed and flood plain).
- (b) Lakes and reservoirs.
- (c) Agricultural fields (Haryana).
- (d) Coastal / marine sand.
- (e) Palaeo-channels (Bikaner in Rajasthan).



THE PRICE ELASTICITY FOR DEMAND OF SAND

As the price elasticity of demand for sand is inelastic (-0.88), any increase in price in absence of marketable alternative will not have any significant impact on demand. Use of crushed stones or other substitute material should be promoted. The regional context of aggregate resources, market demand, and the environmental impacts of various alternatives must be understood before any site-specific proposal for aggregate extraction can be reviewed.

Evaluation of aggregate supply and demand should be undertaken on the basis of production-consumption regions, encompassing the market for aggregate and all potential sources of aggregate within an economical transport distance. The finite nature of high-quality alluvial gravel resources must be recognized, and high-quality PCC-grade aggregates should be reserved only for the uses demanding this quality material (such as concrete). Alternative sources should be used in less demanding applications (such as road sub-base). Part replacement with fly ash in roads and embankments be promoted in place of sand and aggregates.

The environmental costs of sand mining should be incorporated into the price of the product so that alternative sources that require more processing but have less environmental impact become more attractive.

PROCESS OF SEDIMENT TRANSPORT

The loose boundary (consisting of movable material) of an alluvial channel deforms under the action of flowing water and the deformed bed with its changing roughness (bed forms) interacts with the flow. The resulting movement of the bed material (sediment) in the direction of flow is called sediment transport and a critical bed shear stress must be exceeded to start the particle movement.

Such a critical shear stress is referred as incipient (threshold) motion condition, below which the particles will be at rest and the flow is similar to that on a rigid boundary. Some sediment particles roll or slide along the bed intermittently and some others saltate (hopping or bouncing along the bed). The material transported in one or both of these modes is called 'bed load'.

Finer particles (with low fall velocities) are entrained in suspension by the fluid turbulence and transported along the channel in suspension. This mode of transport is called 'suspended load'. Sometimes finer particles from upland catchment (sizes which are not present in the bed material), called 'wash load', are also transported in suspension. The combined bed material and wash load is called 'total load'.



Bed load ranges from a few percent of total load in lowland rivers to perhaps 15% in Mountain Rivers to over 60% in some arid catchments. Although a relatively small part of the total sediment load, the arrangement of bed load sediment constitutes the architecture of sand, and gravel-bed channels.

The rate of sediment transport typically increases as a power function of flow; that is, a doubling of flow typically produces more than a doubling in sediment transport and most sediment transport occurs during floods. The environmental impacts from in-stream mining can be avoided, if the annual bed load is calculated and aggregate extraction is restricted to that value or some portion of it. To accurately limit extraction to some portion of bed load, the amount of sediment that passes the in-stream mining site during a given period of time must be calculated.

There is a large amount of uncertainty in the process of calculating annual rates of bed load transport. How much coarse material is moved, how long it remains in motion as also how far it moves depends on the size, shape & packing of the material and the characteristics of the river flow.

Downstream movement commonly occurs as irregular bursts of short-distance movement separated by longer periods, when the particles remain at rest. Because bed load changes from hour-to-hour, day-to-day, and year-to-year, estimating annual bed load rates is a dynamic process involving careful examination.

Constant variations in the flow of the river make the channel floor and riverbanks a dynamic interface, where some materials are being eroded while others are being deposited. The net balance of this activity, on a short-term basis, is referred to as scour or fill.

On a long-term basis, continued scour results in erosion (degradation), while continued fill results in deposition (aggradation).

A general indicator of the stability of a stream relates to the amount of vegetation present. Gravel bars that are vegetated or where the gravel is tightly packed, generally indicate streams, where the gravel supply is in balance. Streams with excessive gravel generally have gravel bars with little or no vegetation, and are surfaced with loosely packed gravel.



SUSTAINABLE SAND AND GRAVEL MINING GUIDELINES

The broad principle on which any sustainable sand mining Guidelines / policy can be based is that river/ natural resources must be utilized for the benefit of the present and future generation, so river resources should be prudently managed and developed. The preparation of District Survey Report is an important initial step.

The Processes under the Guidelines:

- (a) Identification of areas of aggradation / deposition where mining can be allowed; and identification of areas of erosion and proximity to infrastructural structures and installations where mining should be prohibited. Use of satellite imagery for identifying areas of sand deposit and quantity be done.
- (b) Calculation of annual rate of replenishment and allowing time for replenishment after mining in area.
- (c) Identifying ways of scientific and systematic mining.
- (d) Identifying measures for protection of environment and ecology.
- (e) Determining measures for protection of bank erosion.
- (f) A bench mark (BM) with respect to mean sea level (MSL) should be made essential to in-mining channel reaches (MCR). Below which no mining shall be allowed.
- (g) Identifying steps for conservation of mineral.
- (h) Permanent gauging facilities (for discharge and sediment both) should be made compulsory for the sites having excessive mining in consultation with Central Water Commission or any competent State Agency.
- (i) Implementing safeguards for checking illegal and indiscrete mining.

Following the above processes, to begin with it is important to prepare a survey document mapping the status of sand sources in a district. This survey should be conducted and report be prepared for each district. Though it is an acceptable fact that rivers cut across districts and States and every river is an ecosystem in itself. But, keeping in view the fact that the district is the most established unit of administration at which this kind of survey, planning and monitoring can be ensured effectively, it is proposed that every district will prepare this document taking the river stretch in that district as an ecological unit and inventorising other sources of sand in the district.

Besides, the production of aggregate in a particular area is a function of availability of natural resources, the size of the population, the economy of the area and various developmental and infrastructural works being undertaken in the area.



The natural resources must be utilized in environment friendly manner in scientific and systematic way and with the objective of sustainable development the policy on the subject should have provisions for protection of environment & ecology. These factors can be accounted for in a most efficient manner at district level.

The sustainable mining plan needs to be dynamic. A survey should be carried out by the District Environment Impact Assessment Authority (DEIAA) with the assistance of Geology Department, Irrigation Department, Forest Department, Public Works Department, Ground Water Boards, Remote Sensing Department and Mining Department etc. in the district at regular intervals.

The survey shall contain:

1. District wise detail of river or stream and other sand source.
2. District wise availability of sand or gravel or aggregate resources.
3. District wise detail of existing mining leases of sand and aggregates.

Based on this survey document, the action plan shall divide the river/ stream/ other sources of the District into the following categories:

1. River / Stream beds sections / other sources suitable for extraction of sand and aggregates.
2. River / Stream beds sections / other sources prohibited for extraction of sand and aggregates.

The river/ streams/ other sources of sand and aggregate are studied on following parameters:

a) Geomorphological studies

- i) Place of origin
- ii) Catchment area.
- iii) General profile of river stream.
- iv) Annual deposition factor.
- v) Replenishment.
- vi) Total potential of minor mineral in the river bed.

b) Geological studies

- i) Lithology of catchment area.
- ii) Tectonics and structural behavior of rocks.

c) Climatic Factors

- i) Intensity of rainfall.
- ii) Climate Zone.
- iii) Temperature variation



The following points to be considered while selecting the river / stream for mining besides the above parameters:

- i) A stable river is able to constantly transport the flow of sediments produced by watershed such that it's dimensions (width and depth) pattern and vertical profile are maintained without aggrading (building up) or degrading (scouring down).
- ii) The amount of boulders, cobbles, pebbles, and sand deposited in river bed equals to the amount delivered to the river from catchment area and from bank erosion minus amount transported downstream each year.
- iii) It is compulsive nature of river to meander in their beds and therefore they will have to be provided with adequate corridor for meandering without hindrance. Any attempt to diminish the width of the corridor (floodway) and curb the freedom to meander would prove counterproductive.
- iv) Erosion and deposition is law of nature. The river stream has to complete its geomorphological cycles from youth, mature to old age.
- v) River capturing is unavoidable.
- vi) Fundamentally the lowest point of any stream is fixed by sea level.

This survey document should be prepared in the district based on direct and indirect benefits of mining and identification of the potential threats to the river / stream beds in the district.

Besides, calculating the carrying capacity of the river / stream beds / other sources to find out maximum quantity available to be allowed for removal each year from the sources, it should also provide various measures to regulate sand and aggregate mining in a systemic way.

It has to provide for environmentally safe depth of mining and safeguards of banks by prescribing safe distance from banks. It is required that there should be a Sub-Divisional Committee which should visit each site and make recommendation. The Committee should comprise of Sub-Divisional Magistrate, Officers from Irrigation department, State Pollution Control Board or Committee, Forest department, Geology or mining officer shall visit each site for which environmental clearance has been applied for and make recommendation on suitability of site for mining or prohibition thereof.



THE STRUCTURE OF DISTRICT SURVEY REPORT

The report can have following structure:

1. Introduction
2. Overview of Mining Activity in the District
3. The List of Mining Leases in the District with location, area and period of validity
4. Details of Royalty or Revenue received in last three years
5. Detail of Production of Sand or Bajari or minor mineral in last three years
6. Process of Deposition of Sediments in the rivers of the District
7. General Profile of the District
8. Land Utilization Pattern in the district: Forest, Agriculture, Horticulture, Mining etc.
9. Physiography of the District
10. Rainfall: month-wise
11. Geology and Mineral Wealth

12. Drainage System with description of main rivers.

Sl.No.	NAME OF RIVER	AREA DRAINED (Sq. Km)	% AREA DRAINED

13. Salient Features of Important Rivers and Streams:

Sl.No.	Name of the River / Stream	Total Length in the District (in Km)	Place of origin	Altitude at Origin

14. Methodology Adopted for Calculating of Mineral Potential

The mineral potential is calculated based on field investigation and geology of the catchment area of the river/ streams. As per the policy of the State and location, depth of minable mineral is defined. The area for removal of mineral in a river or stream can be decided depending on geo-morphology



and other factors, it can be 50% to 60% of the area of a particular river/stream, e.g. in Himachal Pradesh mineral constituents like boulders, river born bajari, sand up to a depth of one meter are considered as resource mineral. Other constituents like clay and silt are excluded as waste while calculating the mineral potential of particular river/ stream.

The specific gravity of each mineral constituent is different. While calculating the mineral potential, the average specific gravity is taken as 2.25. The percent of mineral constituent like boulder, river bajari, sand also varies for different river and streams. While calculating the mineral potential the percentage of each mineral constituent is taken as, Boulders 35-40%, Bajari - 30-35%, Sand 25-30% and 5-10% for silt and clay.

The quantum of deposition varies from stream to stream depending upon factors like catchment lithology, discharge, river profile and geomorphology of the river course. There are certain geomorphological features developed in the river beds such as channel bar, point bar etc. where annual deposition is more even two to three meters.

For illustration one example of Yamuna River in Sirmaour district of Himachal Pradesh is given below:

Portion of the River / Stream Recommended for Mineral Concession	Length of area recommended for mineral concession (in kilometer)	Average width of area recommended for mineral concession (in meters)	Area recommended for mineral concession (in square meter)	Mineable mineral potential (in metric tonne) (60% of total mineral potential)
From Downstream of confluence with Tons River to Behral near Haryana and Uttar Pradesh border	31	478	14818000	16803612

Note: Considering the density of river bed material to be **1.89 g/cm³**

Present Status of Mining

This gives the detail of mining leases already in operation in this stretch, area and production in last three years from these leases is calculated.



Mineral Potential is calculated in following way:

Mineral Potential

Boulder (MT)	Bajari (MT)	Sand (MT)	Total Mineable Mineral Potential (MT)
5601204	6801462	4400946	16803612

Annual Deposition

336072	408088	264057	1008217
--------	--------	--------	---------

Recommendation:

From the above it is clear that about 16803612 metric tonnes of mineral is available up to depth of one meter in the river bed of Yamuna in Sirmour district.

The annual deposition is 1008217 MT.

The average annual production is 80000 MT.

So, 16723612 MT of mineral can be safely removed.

In similar manner it should be calculated for each river and stream in the district and compiled in following format:

Sl.No.	River/ Stream	Portion of the river / stream recommended for mineral concession	Length of the recommended area for mineral concession (in kilometer)	Average width of the recommended area for mineral concession (in meters)	Area recommended for mineral concession (in sq.mtrs.)	Mineable mineral potential (in metric tonne) (60% of total mineral potential)
Total for the District						

About the size of the mining leases for the aggregates it should be borne in mind that a river / stream can be divided into two zones, which in-turn is dynamic i.e. the zone of erosion and



zone of deposition. These zones of deposition and erosion are extended in different patches in the river.

Any mining lease granted in larger tract can cover both the zones, and mining activity in zone of erosion can further aggravate the problem of erosion and as such the mining activity can be allowed only in the zone of the deposition. The mining leases of larger areas in rivers are neither in interest of environment nor in the interest of mineral conservation.

In Himalayan states the rivers and wasteland has been mostly classed as forest land and mining on that requires diversion of forest land and payment of compensatory afforestation and NPV etc. The land in river beds in hilly tracts and many small rivers at any one site seldom exceed 5 hectare, so not allowing sand mining leases less than 5 hectare on river beds further aggravates the situation. So the size of mining lease for river sand mining should be determined by the State as per the local situation.



MANAGEMENT PLAN

1. River Bed Mining Recommendations:

a) Permit Mining Volume Based on Measured Annual Replenishment

In the first year following adoption of the management plan, a volume equal to the estimated annual replenishment could be extracted from the reach of channel. Replenishment (up to the elevation of the selected channel configuration) would need to occur before subsequent extraction could take place. The concept of annual replenishment accounts for the episodic nature of sediment transport. For example, during wet periods with high stream flows, and a high contribution of sediment from hill slopes and tributaries, monitoring data would show that sand and gravel bars are replenished quickly. During drought periods with low stream flow, and little sediment supply or transport, monitoring data would likely show that bars were replenished at a slower rate.

The use of monitoring data is essential in measuring when actual replenishment occurs. The use of the concept of annual replenishment protects long-term channel stability as well as aquatic and riparian habitat by extracting a volume sustainable by watershed processes.

b) Establish an Absolute Elevation below Which No Extraction May Occur (Minimum Enveloped Level or Redline).

The absolute elevation below which no mining could occur or "redline" would be surveyed on a site-specific basis in order to avoid impacts to structures such as bridges and to avoid vegetation impacts associated with down-cutting due to excessive removal of sediment. An extraction site can be determined after setting the deposition level at 1 m above natural channel thalweg elevation, as determined by the survey approved by mine plan approving authority.

c) Limit River Bed Extraction Methods to Bar Skimming

If mining is limited to the downstream end of the bar with a riparian buffer on both the channel and hill slope (or floodplain) side, bar skimming would minimise impacts. Other methods such as excavation of trenches or pools in the low flow channel lower the local base level, and maximise upstream (head cutting and incision) and downstream (widening and braiding) impacts. In addition, direct disturbance of the substrate in the low flow channel should be avoided. Trenching on bars may be beneficial in the future if the river becomes severely aggraded, flat, shallow and braided. Trenching of bars may initially impact a smaller area of riparian habitat than skimming - as a result of excavating deeper rather than shallow skimming of a large area. However, over the



long-term, the upstream and downstream effects of a trench on the bar or in the channel may offset any short-term benefit derived from this method.

d) Extract Sand and Gravel from the Downstream Portion of the Bar:

Retaining the upstream one to two thirds of the bar and riparian vegetation while excavating from the downstream one to two third of the bar is accepted as a method to promote channel stability and protect the narrow width of the low flow channel necessary for aquatic life. Sand and gravel would be re-deposited in the excavated downstream one to two thirds of the bar (or downstream of the widest point of the bar) where an eddy would form during sediment transporting flows. In contrast, if excavation occurs on the entire bar after removing existing riparian vegetation, there is a greater potential for widening and braiding of the low flow channel.

e) Concentrate Activities to Minimise Disturbance:

River bed extraction activities should be concentrated or localised to a few bars rather than spread out over many bars. This localisation of extraction will minimise the area of disturbance of upstream and downstream effects. Skimming decreases habitat and species diversity - these effects should not be expanded over a large portion of the area.

f) Review Cumulative Effects of Sand and Gravel Extraction:

The cumulative impact of all mining proposals should be reviewed on an annual basis to determine if cumulative riverine effects or effects to the estuary are likely.

g) Maintain Flood Capacity:

Flood capacity in the river should be maintained in areas where there are significant flood hazards to existing structures or infrastructure.

h) Establish a Long-term Monitoring Program:

Monitoring of changes in bed elevation and channel morphology, and aquatic and riparian habitat upstream and downstream of the extraction would identify any impacts of sand and gravel extraction to biologic resources. Long-term data collected over a period of decades as sand and gravel extraction occurs will provide data to use in determining trends.

i) Minimise Activities That Release Fine Sediment to the River:

No washing, crushing, screening, stockpiling, or plant operations should occur at or below the streams "average high water elevation," or the dominant discharge. These and similar activities have the potential to release fine sediments into the stream, providing habitat conditions harmful to local fish.



j) Retain Vegetation Buffer at Edge of Water and Against River Bank:

Riparian vegetation performs several functions essential to the proper maintenance of geomorphic and biological processes in rivers. It shields river banks and bars from erosion. Additionally, riparian vegetation, including roots and downed trees, serves as cover for fish, provides food source, works as a filter against sediment inputs, and aids in nutrient cycling. More broadly, the riparian zone is necessary to the integrity of the ecosystem providing habitat for invertebrates, birds and other wildlife.

k) The River Bed mining should only be allowed during the dry season.

No River bed mining should be permitted during rainy season (see Appendix 9).

l) An Annual Status and Trends Report:

This report should review permitted extraction quantities in light of results of the monitoring program, or as improved estimates of replenishment become available. The report should document changes in bed elevation, channel morphology, and aquatic and riparian habitat. The report should also include a record of extraction volumes permitted, and excavation location. Finally, recommendations for reclamation, if needed should be documented.

2. Off-Channel or Floodplain Extraction Recommendations

a) Floodplain Extraction should be set back from the Main Channel

In a dynamic alluvial system, it is not uncommon for meanders to migrate across a floodplain. In areas where sand and gravel occurs on floodplains or terraces, there is a potential for the river channel to migrate toward the pit. If the river erodes through the area left between the excavated pit and the river, there is a potential for "river capture," a situation where the low flow channel is diverted through the pit. In order to avoid river capture, excavation pits should set back from the river to provide a buffer, and should be designed to withstand the 100-year flood (100-year ARI). Adequate buffer widths and reduced pit slope gradients are preferred over engineered structures which require maintenance in perpetuity. Hydraulic, geomorphic, and geotechnical studies should be conducted prior to design and construction of the pit and bund. In addition to river capture, extraction pits create the possibility of stranding fish.

b) The maximum depth of Floodplain Extraction should remain above the Channel Thalweg

Floodplain pits should not be excavated below the elevation of the thalweg in the adjacent channel. This will minimise the impacts of potential river capture by limiting the potential for head cutting and the potential of the pit to trap sediment. A shallow excavation (above the water table) would provide a depression that would fill with



water part of the year, and develop seasonal wetland habitat. An excavation below the water table would provide deep water habitat.

c) Side Slopes of Floodplain Excavation Should Range from 3:1 to 10:1

Side slopes of a floodplain pit should be graded to a slope that ranges from 3:1 to 10:1. This will allow for a range of vegetation from wetland to upland. Steep side slopes excavated in floodplain pits on other systems have not been successfully reclaimed, since it is difficult for vegetation to become stabilised. Terrace pits should be designed with a large percentage of edge habitat with a low gradient which will naturally sustain vegetation at a variety of water levels.

d) Place Stockpiled Topsoil above the 25-year Return Period or ARI Level

Stockpiled topsoil can introduce a large supply of fines to the river during a flood event and degrade fish habitat. Storage above the 25-year flood (25-year ARI) inundation level is sufficient to minimise this risk.

e) Floodplain Pits Should Be Restored to Wetland Habitat or Reclaimed for Agriculture

The key to successful restoration or reclamation is to conserve or import adequate material to re-fill the pit, while ensuring that pit margins are graded to allow for development of significant wetland and emergent vegetation.

f) Establish a Long-term Monitoring Program

A long-term monitoring program should provide data illustrating any impacts to river stability, groundwater, fisheries, and riparian vegetation. The monitoring program should assess the success of any reclamation or restoration attempted.

g) An Annual Status and Trends Report

The status and trends report described previously should include a section on the hydrologic and biologic components of floodplain pit reclamation.

3. Extraction Methods

The important methods of sand and gravel mining operations are as below:

- a) Bar scalping or skimming** is extraction of sand and gravel from the surface of bars. This method generally requires that surface irregularities be smoothed out and that the extracted material be limited to what could be taken above an imaginary line sloping upwards and away from the water from a specified level above the river's water surface at the time of extraction (typically 0.3 - 0.6 m (1-2 ft)). Bar scalping is commonly repeated year after year. To maintain the hydraulic control provided to upstream by the Riffle head, the preferred method of bar scalping is now generally to leave the top one-third (approximately) of the bar undisturbed, mining only from the downstream two-



thirds.

b) Dry-Pit Channel Mining

Dry-pit channel mines are pits excavated within the active channel on dry intermittent or ephemeral stream beds. Dry pits are often left with abrupt upstream margins, from which head cuts are likely to propagate upstream.

c) Wet-Pit Channel Mining

Wet-pit mining involves excavation of a pit in the active channel below the surface water in a perennial stream or below the alluvial groundwater table.

d) Bar Excavation

A pit is excavated at the downstream end of the bar as a source of aggregate and as a site to trap sand and gravel. Upon completion, the pit may be connected to the channel at its downstream end to provide side channel habitat.

e) Channel-wide River bed Mining

In rivers with a highly variable flow regime, sand and gravel are commonly extracted across the entire active channel during the dry season. The bed is evened out and uniformly (or nearly so) lowered.

4. Reclamation Plans

Reclamation plans should include:

- a) A baseline survey consisting of existing condition cross-section data: Cross-sections must be surveyed between two documented endpoints set back from the top of bank, and elevations should be referenced to bench mark;
- b) The proposed mining cross-section data should be plotted over the baseline data to illustrate the vertical extent of the proposed excavation;
- c) The cross-section of the replenished bar should be the same as the baseline data. This illustrates that the bar elevation after the bar is replenished will be the same as the bar before extraction;
- d) A planimetric map showing the aerial extent of the excavation and extent of the riparian buffers;
- e) A planting plan developed by a plant ecologist familiar with the flora of the river for any areas such as roads that need to be restored;
- f) A monitoring plan: The appropriate reclamation plans can turn river-bed and floodplain sand and gravel mining operations into something perceived by the public as desirable.



MARINE SAND MINING AND IMPACT ON MARINE BIODIVERSITY

The mining of marine aggregates is increasing significantly. Marine sand mining has had an impact on seabed flora and fauna. Dredging and extraction of aggregates from the benthic (sea bottom) zone destroys organisms, habitats and ecosystems and deeply affects the composition of biodiversity, usually leading to a net decline in faunal biomass and abundance or a shift in species composition. Aggregate particles that are too fine to be used are rejected by dredging boats, releasing vast dust plumes and changing water turbidity, resulting in major changes to aquatic and riparian habitats over large areas.

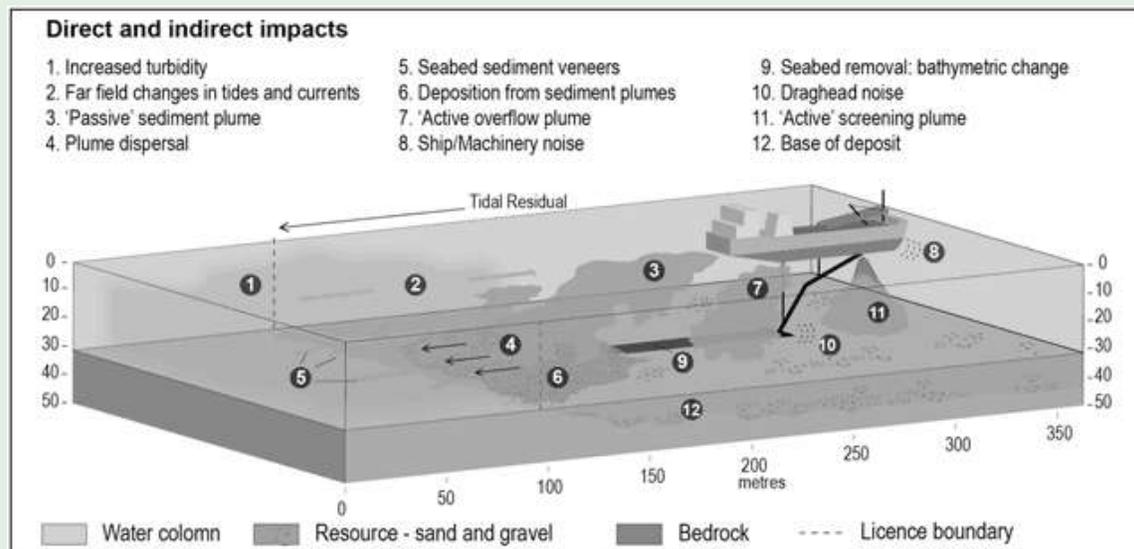


Figure: Direct and indirect consequences of aggregates dredging on the marine environment.

Source: Tillin, H.M., Houghton, A.J., Saunders, J.E., Drabble, R. and Hull, S.C., 2011. Direct and Indirect Impacts of Aggregate Dredging, Marine Aggregate Levy Sustainability Fund (MALSF). Science Monograph Series 1, 1-46.



REDUCING CONSUMPTION OF SAND

Because sand is still very cheap - sand itself is freely accessible; only extraction and transportation costs need to be covered - there is little or no incentive to induce a change in our consumption. Despite the very high value of minerals found in the sand, it is mostly used for concrete or is buried under highways. Recycled building and quarry dust material can be a substitute for sand. Concrete rubble should be recycled to avoid using aggregates, at least for low-quality uses.

Substitutes for sand are available. Quarry dust could be used to replace sand in general concrete structures. The replacement of sand by up to 40% of incinerator ash exhibits higher compressive strength than regular cement mortars. Some desert sand can be used if mixed with other material. There are alternatives for building houses, including wood, straw and recycled material. However, the current building industry is geared toward concrete know-how and equipment.

Training of architects and engineers, new laws and regulations, and positive incentives are needed to initiate a shift for lowering our dependency on sand. Renewable and recycled materials need to be targeted for building houses and roads. Use of Manufactured Sand (M-Sand) also needs to be promoted.

Alternative sources of sand and gravel, which accumulate at the bottom of dams, can also be targeted. Their use would address the problem of these aggregates accumulating which leads to a reduced capacity of dams to store water and could result in the dams' water intakes being blocked. Dams regularly release large amounts of water to flush out aggregates.

The important standard setting bodies in India are taking steps to promote the usage of alternatives to sand and gravel. Bureau of Indian Standards, the National Standards Body of the country, considering the scarcity of sand and coarse aggregates from natural sources, has evolved number of alternatives which are ultimately aimed at conservation of natural resources apart from promoting use of various waste materials without compromising in quality.

These measures include permitting in the Concrete Code (IS 456) as also in the National Building Code of India, the use of slag - a waste from steel industry, fly ash - a waste from thermal power plants, crushed over-burnt bricks and tiles - waste from clay brick and tile industry, in plain cement concrete as an alternative to sand/natural aggregate, subject to fulfilling the requirements of the Code. This Code, further, encourages use of fly ash and ground granulated blast furnace slag as part replacement of ordinary Portland cement in plain as well as reinforced cement concrete.

The Indian Standard on concrete mix design (IS 10262) has been upgraded to include guidance and examples of designing concrete mixes using fly ash and slag. Provisions for compliance for requisite quality of concrete made using fly ash and slag have been duly covered for the manufacturers of ready-mixed concrete in the Indian Standard Code of practice for RMC (IS 4926).

BIS has also formulated an Indian Standard Specification for artificial lightweight aggregates covering manufactured aggregates, such as foamed blast furnace slag, bloated clay aggregate, sintered fly ash aggregate and cinder aggregate (IS 9142).

A series of Indian Standards has also been formulated on various precast concrete products such as solid and hollow concrete blocks, light weight concrete blocks, autoclaved aerated concrete blocks, preformed foam concrete blocks, partial prefabricated concrete flooring and roofing units, concrete pipes, etc, all permitting use of fly ash and slag.



THE REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE HEADED BY SECRETARY, MoEF - 2010

A Committee headed by Secretary, Ministry of Environment and Forest was set up on the subject in 2010. The Committee considered this subject in detail and prepared a report. The important parts of the report are as follows:

Definition of Minor Mineral:

The term 'minor mineral' is defined in clause (e) of Section 3 of MMDR Act, 1957: '3 (e) "minor minerals" means building stones, gravel, ordinary clay, ordinary sand other than sand used for prescribed purposes and any other material which the Central Government may, by Notification in the Gazette of India declare to be a minor mineral;'

The term 'ordinary sand' used in clause (e) of Section 3 of the MMDR Act, 1957 has been further clarified in rule 70 of the MCR, 1960 as:

- (iv) Purposes of stowing in coal mines,
- (v) For manufacture of silvicate cement,
- (vi) Manufacture of sodium silicate and for
- (vii) Manufacture of pottery and glass.

Additionally, the Central Government has declared the following minerals as minor minerals:

Sl.No.	Minor Minerals	Sl.No.	Minor Minerals	Sl.No.	Minor Minerals
i)	Boulder	vi)	Brick-earth	xi)	Slate and shale when used for building material
ii)	Shingle	vii)	Fuller's earth	xii)	Marble
iii)	Chalcedony pebbles used for ball mill purposes only	viii)	Bentonite	xiii)	Stone used for making household utensils
iv)	Lime shell, kankar and limestone used in kilns for manufacture of lime used as building material	ix)	Road metal	xiv)	Quartzite and sandstone when used for purposes of building or for making road metal and household utensils
v)	Murram	x)	Reh-matti	xv)	Saltpetre, and
xvi)	Ordinary earth (Used for filling or leveling purposes in construction or embankments, roads, railways building).				



It may thus be observed that minerals have been classified into major and minor minerals based on their end use rather than level of production, level of mechanization, export and import etc. There do exist some minor mineral mines of silica sand and limestone where the scale of mechanization and level of production is much higher than those of industrial mineral mines. Further, in terms of the economic cost and revenue, it has been estimated that the total value of minor minerals constitutes about 10% of the total value of mineral production whereas the value of non-metallic minerals comprises only 3%. It is, therefore, evident that the operations of mines of minor minerals need to be subject to some regulatory parameters as that of mines of major minerals. Further, unlike India there does not exist such system in any other country where minerals are classified as major and minor based on end usage. Thus, there is a need to re-look at the definition of 'minor minerals' per se. It is, therefore, recommended that Ministry of Mines along with Indian Bureau of Mines, in consultation with the State Governments may re-examine the classification of minerals into major and minor categories so that the regulatory aspects and environment mitigation measures are appropriately integrated for ensuring sustainable and scientific mining with least impacts on environment.

Size of the Mine Lease:

Area for grant of mine lease varies from State to State. Maximum area which can be held under one or more mine lease is 2590 ha or 25.90 sq. miles in Jammu and Kashmir. Rajasthan prescribed a minimum limit of 1 ha for a lease. Maximum area prescribed for permit is 50x50 m. In most of the States area of permit is not specified in the rules.

It has recently been observed by Punjab and Haryana High Court in its order dated 15.05.2009 that State Government are apparently granting short term permits by dividing the mining area into small zones in effect to avoid environmental norms. There is, thus a need to bring uniformity in the extent of area to be granted for mine lease so as to ensure that eco-friendly scientific mining practices can be adopted. It is recommended that the minimum size of mine lease should be 5 ha. Further, preparation of comprehensive mine plan for contiguous stretches of mineral deposits by the respective State Governments may also be encouraged. This may suitably be incorporated in the Mineral Concession Rules, 1960 by Ministry of Mines.

Period of Mine Lease:

The period of lease varies from State to State depending on type of concessions, minerals and its end use. The minimum lease period is one year and maximum 30 years. Minerals like granite where huge investments are required, a period of 20 years is generally given with the provisions of renewal. Permits are generally granted for short periods which vary from one month to a maximum one year. In States like Haryana, minor mineral leases are auctioned for a particular time period. Mining is considered to be capital intensive industry and considerable time is lost for developing the mine before it attains the status of fully developed mine. If the tenure of the mine lease is short, it would encourage the lessee to concentrate more on rapid exploitation of mineral without really undertaking adequate measures for reclamation and rehabilitation of mined out area, posing thereby a serious threat to the environment and health of the workers and public at large.



There is thus, a need to bring uniformity in the period of lease. It is recommended that a minimum period of mine lease should be 5 years, so that eco- friendly scientific and sustainable mining practices are adopted. However, under exceptional circumstances arising due to judicial interventions, short term mining leases / contracts could be granted to the State Agencies to meet the situation arising there from.

Cluster of Mine Approach for Small Sized Mines:

Considering the nature of occurrence of minor mineral, economic condition of the lessee and the likely difficulties to be faced by Regulatory Authorities in monitoring the environmental impacts and implementation of necessary mitigation measures, it may be desirable to adopt cluster approach in case of smaller mine leases being operated presently. Further, these clusters need be provided with processing/crusher zones for forward integration and minimizing excessive pressure on road infrastructure. The respective State Governments / Mine Owners Associations may facilitate implementation of Environment Management Plans in such cluster of mines.

Requirement of Mine Plan for Minor Minerals:

At present, most of the State Governments have not made it mandatory for preparation of mining plan in respect of minor minerals. In some States like Rajasthan, eco- friendly mining plans are prepared, which are approved by the State Mining Department. The eco- friendly mining plans so prepared, though conceptually welcome, are observed to be deficient and need to be made comprehensive in a manner as is being done for major minerals. Besides, the aspects of reclamation and rehabilitation of mined out areas, progressive mine closure plan, as in vogue for major minerals could be introduced for minor minerals as well.

It is recommended that provision for preparation and approval of mine plan, as in the case of major minerals may appropriately be provided in the Rules governing the mining of minor minerals by the respective State Governments. These should specifically include the provision for reclamation and rehabilitation of mined out area, progressive mine closure plan and post mine land use.

Creation of Separate Corpus for Reclamation / Rehabilitation of Mines of Minor Minerals:

Mining of minor minerals, in our country, is by and large unorganized sector and is practiced in haphazard and unscientific manner. At times, the size of the leasehold is also too small to address the issue of reclamation and rehabilitation of mined outs areas. It may, therefore, be desirable that before the concept of mine closure plan for minor minerals is adopted, the existing abandoned mines may be reclaimed and rehabilitated with the involvement of the State Government. There is thus, a need to create a separate corpus, which may be utilized for reclamation and rehabilitation of mined out areas. The respective State Governments may work out a suitable mechanism for creation of such corpus on the 'polluter pays' principle. An organizational structure may also need to be created for undertaking and monitoring these activities.

Depth of Mining:

Mining of minerals, whether major or minor have a direct bearing on the hydrological regime of the



area. Besides, affecting the availability of water as a resource, it also affects the quality of water through direct run of going into the surface water bodies and infiltration / leaching into groundwater. Further, groundwater withdrawal, dewatering of water from mine pit and diversion of surface water may cause surface and sub- surface hydrologic systems to dry up. An ideal situation would require that quarrying should be restricted to unsaturated zone only above the phreatic water table and should not intersect the groundwater table at any point of time. However, from the point of view of mineral conservation, it may not be desirable to impose blanket ban on mining operation below groundwater table. It is, therefore, recommended that detailed hydro-geological report should be prepared in respect of any mining operation for minor minerals to be undertaken below groundwater table. Based on the findings of the study so undertaken and the comments/ recommendations of Central Ground Water Authority/ State Ground Water Board, a decision regarding restriction on depth of mining for any area should be taken on case to case basis.

Uniform Minor Mineral Concession Rules:

The economic value of the minor minerals excavated in the country is estimated to contribute to about 9% of the total value of the minerals whereas the non- metallic minerals contribute to about 2.8%. Keeping in view the large extent of mining of minor minerals and its significant potential to adversely affect the environment, it is recommended that Model Mineral Concession rules may be framed for minor minerals as well and the minor minerals may be subjected to a simpler regulatory regime, which is, however, similar to major minerals regime.

River Bed Mining:

1. Environment damage being caused by unregulated river bed mining of sand, bajri and boulders is attracting considerable attention including in the courts. The following recommendations are therefore made for the river bed mining.
 - (a) In the case of mining leases for riverbed sand mining, specific river stretches should be identified and mining permits/lease should be granted stretch wise, so that the requisite safeguard measures are duly implemented and are effectively monitored by the respective Regulatory Authorities.
 - (b) The depth of mining may be restricted to 3m / water level, whichever is less.
 - (c) For carrying out mining in proximity to any bridge and / or embankment, appropriate safety zone should be worked out on case to case basis, taking into account the structural parameters, locational aspects, flow rate etc. and no mining should be carried out in the safety zone so worked out.

Conclusion:

Mining of minor minerals, though individually, because of smaller size of mine leases is perceived to have lesser impact as compared to mining of major minerals. However, the activity as a whole is seen to have significant adverse impacts on environment. It is, therefore, necessary that the mining of minor minerals is subjected to simpler but strict regulatory regime and carried out only under an



approved framework of mining plan, which should provide for reclamation and rehabilitation of the mined out areas. Further, while granting mining leases by the respective State Governments "location of any eco-fragile zone (s) within the impact zone of the proposed mining area, the linked Rules/ Notifications governing such zones and the judicial pronouncements, if any, need be duly noted.

The Union Ministry of Mines along with Indian Bureau of Mines and respective State Governments should therefore make necessary provisions in this regard under the Mines and Minerals (Development and Regulation) Act, 1957, Mineral Concession Rules, 1960 and adopt model Guidelines to be followed by all States (emphasis supplied)".



REGIME OF LAW AND ADMINISTRATIVE ORDERS RELATING TO MINING OF MINOR MINERALS

The Entry 54 of List 1 in Schedule VII to the Constitution of India is the entry which empowers the Parliament in respect of 'Regulation of Mines and Minerals Development. Entry 23 of List 2 of the same Schedule, read with Article 246 (3) of the Constitution confers legislative powers on the State Legislature in respect of Regulation of Mines and Mineral Development, but, this power is subject to the provisions of List 1 with respect to the regulation and development under the control of the Union. The Parliament, with the object to amend and consolidate the law relating to the regulation of labour and safety in mines enacted the Mines Act, 1952. Section 2 (JJ) of the Mines Act, 1952 defines "minerals" to mean, all substances which can be obtained from the earth by mining, digging, drilling, dredging, hydraulic, quarrying or by any other operation and includes mineral oils (which, in turn, include natural gas and petroleum). On 1st June, 1958, the Mines and Minerals (Development and Regulation) Act, 1957 was promulgated. This Act provides, inter alia, for general restrictions on undertaking prospecting and mining operations, the procedure for obtaining prospecting licenses or mining leases in respect of the land in which the minerals vests in the Government, the rule making power for regulating the grant of prospecting licenses and mining leases, special powers of Central Government to undertake prospecting or mining operations in certain cases, and for development of minerals.

The protection of natural environment is one of the fundamental duties of every citizen under Article 51-A of the Constitution of India. Article 48-A of the Constitution, obliged the State to endeavor to protect and improve the environment and to safeguard the forests and wild life of the country. The Environment (Protection) Act and Rules, 1986 were enacted and came into force on 19th November, 1986. The object of this Act is to provide for the protection and improvement of environment and for matters connected therewith. Under provisions of the Act and Rules of 1986, MoEFCC has issued various Notifications regulating the mining of minor minerals, specifically stating the procedures that were required to be complied by persons intending to carry on such mining activity and for the authorities to regulate the same.

Prior to 1994, there was no specific regime in place in relation to mining activity being carried out. The Notification issued by MoEF on 27th January, 1994, in exercise of the powers vested in it under Sub-Rule 3 of Rule 5 of the Rules of 1986 and Sub Section (1) and Clause (v) of Sub-Section (2) of Section 3 of the Act of 1986, prescribed the requirement and procedure for seeking Environmental Clearance for the projects listed in Schedule I. Schedule I of this Notification did not list mining projects of minor minerals. On the contrary, the projects covered under S. No. 20 of Schedule I of this Notification were only "mining projects (major mineral) with leases more than 5 hectares".

It provided for the constitution of Expert Committees and preparation of Environmental Impact Assessment Report which was to be evaluated and assessed by the Impact Assessment Agency. In exercise of its statutory powers afore-indicated, the Central Government on 14th September, 2006,



issued a Notification, i.e., 'Environment Impact Assessment Notification, 2006'. In terms of this Notification, the projects as stated in the Schedule to this Notification required prior Environmental Clearance as per the procedure. The projects have been categorised into two kinds, i.e., Category 'A' and Category 'B' under Clause 2 of the Notification. Projects under Category 'A' were required to take prior Environmental Clearance by MoEFCC. For Category 'B' projects, Environmental Clearance was to be given by State Environment Impact Assessment Authority (SEIAA).

The mining of minerals (both major and minor) were brought under the ambit of the EIA Notification, 2006. The mine lease area of more than equal to 50 ha was Category 'A' and mine lease area less than 50 ha and more than equal to 5 ha was category 'B' project. Mine lease area of less than 5 ha (both major and minor) was kept out of EIA Notification purview.

The Notification of 2006 came to be amended by Notification dated 1st December, 2009. It included the category of non-coal mine and coal mine lease and provided that non-coal mine lease of area more than equal to 5 ha and less than 50 ha will be category 'B' and mine lease area more than equal to 50 ha will be category 'A'. Similarly, mine lease area of more than equal to 5 ha and less than 150 ha for coal mine lease will be category 'B' and mine lease area of coal mine more than 150 ha will be category 'A'. Here again mining lease area of less than 5 ha (both coal and non-coal mine) was kept out of EIA Notification purview.

The Hon'ble Supreme Court, vide its order dated 27.2.2012 in I.A. No.12-13 of 2011 in SLP (C) No.19628-19629 of 2009 titled Deepak Kumar etc. v/s State of Haryana & Ors. has inter alia ordered *"We, in the meanwhile, order that leases of minor mineral including their renewal for an area of less than five hectares be granted by the States/Union Territories only after getting environmental clearance from the MoEF."*

Hon'ble Apex Court in Deepak Kumar's case (supra) extensively examined the environmental concerns, in the context of mining of minor minerals, considering its impact on the environment. The Apex Court observed that Extraction of alluvial material from within or near a streambed has a direct impact on the stream's physical habitat characteristics. These characteristics include bed elevation, substrate composition and stability, in-stream roughness elements, depth, velocity, turbidity, sediment transport, stream discharge and temperature. Altering these habitat characteristics can have deleterious impacts on both in-stream biota and the associated riparian habitat. The demand for sand continues to increase day by day as building and construction of new infrastructures and expansion of existing ones is continuous thereby placing immense pressure on the supply of the sand resource and hence mining activities are going on legally and illegally without any restrictions. Lack of proper planning and sand management cause disturbance of marine ecosystem and also upset the ability of natural marine processes to replenish the sand. Quarrying, mining and removal of sand from in-stream and upstream of several rivers, which may have serious environmental impact on ephemeral, seasonal and perennial rivers and river beds and sand extraction may have an adverse effect on bio-diversity as well. Further it may also lead to bed degradation and sedimentation having a negative effect on the aquatic life.

Apex Court observed that without conducting any study on the possible environmental impact on/



in the river beds and else- where the auction notices have been issued. Hon'ble Apex Court observed that "We are of the considered view that when we are faced with a situation where extraction of alluvial material within or near a river bed has an impact on the rivers physical habitat characteristics, like river stability, flood risk, environmental degradation, loss of habitat, decline in biodiversity, it is not an answer to say that the extraction is in blocks of less than 5 hectares, separated by 1 kilo meter, because their collective impact may be significant, hence the necessity of a proper environmental assessment plan".

In order to ensure compliance of the aforesaid order of the Hon'ble Supreme Court, MoEF issued an OM No.L-11011/47/2011-IA.II(M) dated 18.05.2012 stating inter alia that all mining projects of minor minerals including their renewal, irrespective of the size of the lease would henceforth require prior EC and that the projects of minor minerals with lease area less than 5 ha would be treated as Category "B" as defined in EIA Notification, 2006 and will be considered by the respective State Environment Impact Assessment Authorities (SEIAAs) notified by MoEF and following the procedure prescribed under the EIA Notification, 2006.

On 24th June, 2013, MoEF issued another Office Memorandum stating Guideliness for consideration of proposals for grant of Environmental Clearance under the Notification of 2006 for mining of 'brick earth' and 'ordinary earth' having lease area of less than 5 hectares. Referring to the judgment of the Hon'ble Supreme Court in the case of Deepak Kumar (supra) and its Office Memorandum dated 18th May, 2012, it further considered that the 'brick kiln' manufactures had stated that it was a small scale activity requiring that certain depth should be kept outside the purview of Environmental Clearance. Having considered various aspects, examining the recommendations of the Expert Committee, constituted by MoEF, finally it was directed as follows:

"(a) The activities of borrowing / excavation of 'brick earth' and ordinary earth', upto an area of less than 5 ha, may be categorized under 'B2' Category subject to the following Guideliness in terms of the provisions under '7.I Stage(1)-Screening' of EIA Notification, 2006:

- (i) The activity associated with borrowing/excavation of 'brick earth' and 'ordinary earth' for purpose of brick manufacturing, construction of roads, embankments etc. shall not involve blasting.
- (ii) The borrowing/excavation activity shall be restricted to a maximum depth of 2 m below general ground level at the site.
- (iii) The borrowing/excavation activity shall be restricted to 2 m above the ground water table at the site.
- (iv) The borrowing/excavation activity shall not alter the natural drainage pattern of the area.
- (v) The borrowed/excavated pit shall be restored by the project proponent for useful purpose(s).
- (vi) Appropriate fencing all around the borrowed/excavated pit shall be made to prevent any mishap.



- (vii) Measures shall be taken to prevent dust emission by covering of borrowed/excavated earth during transportation.
 - (viii) Safeguards shall be adopted against health risks on account of breeding of vectors in the water bodies created due to borrowing/excavation of earth.
 - (ix) Workers / labourers shall be provided with facilities for drinking water and sanitation.
 - (x) A berm shall be left from the boundary of adjoining field having a width equal to at least half the depth of proposed excavation.
 - (xi) A minimum distance of 15 m from any civil structure shall be kept from the periphery of any excavation area.
2. (a) The concerned SEIAA while considering granting environmental clearance for such activity for brick earth / ordinary earth will prescribe the Guideliness as stated at (i) to (xi) above and specify that the clearance so granted shall be liable to be cancelled in case of any violation of above Guideliness.
- (b) Notwithstanding what has been stated at (a) above, the following will apply:
- (i) No borrowing of earth / excavation of 'brick earth' or 'ordinary earth' shall be permitted in case the area of borrowing/ excavation is within 1 km of boundary of national parks and wild life sanctuaries.
 - (ii) In case the area of borrowing / excavation is likely to result into a cluster situation i.e. if the periphery of one borrow area is less than 500 m from the periphery of another borrow area and the total borrow area equals or exceeds 5 ha, the activity shall become Category 'B 1' Project under the EIA Notification, 2006. In such a case, mining operations in any of the borrow areas in the cluster will be allowed only if the environmental clearance has been obtained in respect of the cluster. This issues with the approval of the Competent Authority."

These directions which were specific only to 'brick earth' and 'ordinary earth' activities for areas less than 5 hectares, as decided to be categorised as 'B 2' Category projects, subject to the restrictions stated in the memorandum, provided that if the cluster area exceeded 5 hectares, then it would become Category 'B 1' and would not be treated as Category 'B 2' projects. The above Office Memorandum was not dealing with the issues of sand mining or any other minor mineral activity except 'brick earth' and 'ordinary earth'. Further, MoEF has issued an amendment to EIA Notification vide Notification S.O. 2731 (E) dated 9th September 2013 and amended the EIA Notification, 2006 for item 1 (a) as follows:



(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
"1(a)	(i) Mining of minerals.	≥ 50 ha of mining lease area in respect of non-coal mine lease	<50 ha of mining lease area in respect of minor minerals mine lease ; and < 50 ha ≥5 ha of mining lease area in respect of other non-coal mine lease.	General Conditions shall apply except for project or activity of less than 5 ha of mining lease area for minor minerals: Provided that the above exception shall not apply for project or activity if the sum total of the mining lease area of the said project or activity and that of existing operating mines and mining projects which were accorded environment clearance and are located within 500 metres from the periphery of such project or activity equals or exceeds 5 ha.
		>150 ha of mining lease area in respect of coal mine lease.	≤ 150 ha ≥ 5 ha of mining lease area in respect of coal mine lease.	(i) Prior environmental clearance is required at the stage of renewal of mine lease for which an application shall be made up to two years prior to the date due for renewal. Further, a period of two years with effect from the 4th April, 2011 is provided for obtaining environmental clearance for all those mine leases, which were operating as



(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
	(ii) Slurry pipelines (coal lignite and other ores) passing through national parks or sanctuaries or coral reefs, ecologically sensitive areas.	All projects.		<p>on the 4th April, 2011 with requisite valid environmental clearance and which have fallen due for renewal on or after the 4th November, 2011:</p> <p>Provided that no fresh environmental clearance shall be required for a mining project or activity at the time of renewal of mining lease, which has already obtained environmental clearance under this notification.</p> <p>(ii) Mineral prospecting is exempted.</p>



In this Notification a new category of minor mineral was introduced and it was provided that mining lease area of minor mineral less than 50 ha will be category 'B' and will require EC. Accordingly the minor mineral mining projects having less than 5 hectare of lease area are required to be appraised by the SEIAA/SEAC of respective State for granting environment clearance. It was provided that the project or activity of less than 5 ha of mining lease area for minor minerals will be exempt from the General Conditions. Simultaneously the concept of cluster was introduced and it was provided that the exemption of applicability of General Conditions shall not apply for project or activity if the sum total of the mining lease area of the said project or activity and that of existing operating mines and mining projects which were accorded EC and are located within 500 m from the periphery of such project or activity equal or exceeds 5 ha.

The Ministry, on 24th December, 2013, issued another Office Memorandum for consideration of proposals for grant of Environmental Clearance regarding categorisation of Category 'B' projects into Category 'B (1)' and 'B (2)'. Mining of minor minerals had been separately dealt with in this Office Memorandum. This Office Memorandum stated that no river sand mining project with mining lease area of less than 5 hectares may be considered for grant of Environmental Clearance. Such area up to 25 hectares would be categorised as 'B (2)' and such projects were to be considered, subject to the stipulations stated therein. This Office Memorandum stated that no Environmental Clearance would be granted for extraction of minor minerals from any riverbed where the area is less than 5 hectares. Sand mining, in area other than riverbeds, would be permitted, only if the Project Proponent takes Environmental Clearance.

The Ministry vide Notification No. S.O. 1599 (E) dated 25.06.2014 reduced the area of 10 kilo meter to 5 kilo meters for applicability of General Conditions increasing the delegation to States by taking out projects located in 5 to 10 kilo meter of interstate boundary, CEPI, and, PAs from category 'A'.

The anomaly created by the Notification dated 09.09.2013 was corrected vide Notification No. S.O. 2601 (E) dated 7th October 2014, and category of minor mineral was deleted and mining leases were again classed as non-coal mine and coal mine and mining lease area of less than 50 ha was made category 'B' for non-coal mine and mine lease area of less than equal to 150 ha for coal mine was made category 'B'. The mine lease area of less than 5 ha was exempt from the applicability of General Conditions and cluster concept of Notification dated 09.09.2013 was retained.



Notification S.O. 2601 (E) dated 7th October 2014 provides as follows:

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
1(a)	<p>(i) Mining of minerals.</p> <p>(ii) Slurry pipelines (coal lignite and other ores) passing through national parks or sanctuaries or coral reefs, ecologically sensitive areas</p>	<p>≥ 50 ha of mining lease area in respect of non-coal mine lease.</p> <p>>150 ha of mining lease area in respect of coal mine lease.</p> <p>Asbestos mining irrespective of mining area.</p> <p>All projects.</p>	<p><50 ha of mining lease area in respect of non-coal mine lease.</p> <p>≤ 150 ha of mining lease area in respect of coal mine lease.</p>	<p>General Conditions shall apply except for project or activity of less than 5 ha of mining lease area:</p> <p>Provided that the above exception shall not apply for project or activity if the sum total of the mining lease area of the said project or activity and that of existing operating mines and mining projects which were accorded environment clearance and are located within 500 metres from the periphery of such project or activity equals or exceeds 5 ha.</p> <p>Note:</p> <p>(i) Prior environmental clearance is required at the stage of renewal of mine lease for which an application shall be made up to two years prior to the date due for renewal.</p> <p>Provided that no fresh environmental clearance shall be required for a mining project or activity at the time of renewal of mining lease, which has already obtained environmental clearance under this notification.</p> <p>(ii) Mineral prospecting is exempted. "</p>



The NGT vide order dated 13.01.2015 (O.A. No. 123 of 2014 and M.A. No. 419 of 2014) has declared the Notification dated 09.09.2013 as invalid, inoperative and quashed it. The above order has also quashed the paragraph 4 (b) (i) of O.M. dated 24th June 2013 which provided that "No borrowing of earth / excavation of 'brick earth' or 'ordinary earth' shall be permitted in case the area of borrowing / excavation is within 1 km of boundary of national parks and wild life sanctuary." Though this provision was taken from the observation of Hon'ble Supreme Court in W.P. No. 435 of 2012 (Goa Foundation Vs. Union of India) and order dated 04.08.2006 of Supreme Court in *T.N. Godavarman Thirumulpad v. Union of India & Ors.* Supreme Court has taken a view that 1 km. from the boundaries of National Parks and Sanctuaries would be a safety zone, subject to the orders that may be made in IA No.1000 regarding Jamua Ramgarh Sanctuary and the State will not grant any Temporary Working Permit (TWP) in these safety zones comprising 1 km. from the boundaries of National Parks and Sanctuaries.

Similarly the proviso at paragraph 2 (iii) of O.M. dated 24.12.2013 which says that "No river sand mining project, with mine lease area less than 5 ha, may be considered for granting EC" has been quashed. This condition was taken from the recommendations of the Committee headed by the Secretary, MoEF constituted in 2010. The above proviso were quashed on the ground that as EIA Notification places no such restriction, so same cannot be imposed by an executive order and many hill States find it very difficult to get an area equal to or more than 5 ha. in riverbed. The information made available by the States also makes it clear that majority of the mining leases of sand are of area less than 5 hectares.



THE ISSUES AND MANAGEMENT OF MINING IN CLUSTER

In I.A. No. 12-13 of 2011 in SLP Nos. 729-731 / 2011, 21833 / 2009, 12498-499 / 2010, SLP (C) CC ... 16157 / 2011 & CC 18235 / 2011 (Deepak Kumar and Ors. Vs. State of Haryana and Ors. etc.) Hon'ble Supreme Court in its order dated 27.02.2012 on the subject of cluster has quoted the submission of affidavit dated 23.11.2011 of MOEFCC. It says that "The Ministry is of the opinion that where the mining area is homogeneous, physically proximate and on identifiable piece of land of 5 ha. or more, it should not be broken into smaller sizes to circumvent the EIA Notification, 2006 as the EIA Notification, 2006 is not applicable to the mining projects having lease area of less than 5 ha. The Report of Committee on Minor Minerals, under the Chairmanship of Secretary (E&F) with representatives of various state governments as members including the State of Haryana and Rajasthan recommended a minimum lease size of 5 ha for minor minerals for undertaking scientific mining for the purpose of integrating and addressing environmental concerns. Only in cases of isolated discontinued mineral deposits in less than 5 ha, such mining leases may be considered keeping in view the mineral conservation".

The order further quotes that "Cluster of Mine Approach for Small Sized Mines: Considering the nature of occurrence of minor mineral, economic condition of the lessee and the likely difficulties to be faced by Regulatory Authorities in monitoring the environmental impacts and implementation of necessary mitigation measures, it may be desirable to adopt cluster approach in case of smaller mine leases being operated presently. Further these clusters need be provided with processing / crusher zones for forward integration and minimizing excessive pressure on road infrastructure. The respective State Governments / Mine Owners Association may facilitate implementation of Environment Management Plans in such cluster of mines." The order has further quoted the letter dated 1.06.2010 written by the then Minister of Environment, Forest and Climate Change which says on the subject that "A cluster approach to mines should be taken in case of smaller mines leases operating currently". The Hon'ble Court has ordered that "The State of Haryana and various other States have not so far implemented the above recommendations of the MoEF or the Guideliness issued by the Ministry of Mines before issuing auction notices granting short term permits by way of auction of minor mineral boulders gravel, sand etc., in the river beds and elsewhere of less than 5 hectares. We therefore, direct to all the States, Union Territories, MoEF and the Ministry of Mines to give effect to the recommendations made by MoEF in its report of March 2010 and the model Guideliness framed by the Ministry of Mines, within a period of six months from today and submit their compliance reports."

"We in the meanwhile, order that leases of minor mineral including their renewal for an area of less than five hectares be granted by the States/ Union Territories only after getting environmental clearance from the MoEF."



The Ministry vide O.M. No. L-11011/47/2011-IA.II (M) dated 18th May 2012 said that "In order to ensure compliance of the above referred order of the Hon'ble Supreme Court dated 27.02.2012, it has now been decided that all mining projects of minor minerals including their renewal, irrespective of the size of the lease would henceforth require prior environment clearance. Mining projects with lease area up to less than 50 ha including projects of minor mineral with lease area less than 5 ha would be treated as Category 'B' as defined in EIA Notification, 2006 and will be considered by the respective SEIAAs notified by MoEF and following the procedure prescribed under EIA Notification, 2006."

On the issue of cluster, the Notifications No. S.O. 2731 (E) dated 09.09.2013 and Notification No. S.O. No. 2601 (E) of 07.10.2014 were issued.

The above Notifications in Schedule at Item No. 1 (a) in Conditions mentions that "General Conditions shall apply except for projects or activity of less than 5 ha of mining lease area:

Provided that the above exception shall not apply for project or activity if the sum total of the mining lease area of the said project or activity and that of existing operating mines and mining projects which were accorded environment clearance and are located within 500 meters from the periphery of such projects or activity equals or exceeds 5 ha. The Office Memorandum No. J-13012/12/2013-IA-II (1) dated 24.12.2013 is about Guideliness for consideration of proposals for grant of environment clearance under Environment Impact Assessment Notification 2006 and its amendments - regarding categorization of Category 'B' projects/ activities into Category 'B1' & 'B2'.

The above O.M. besides categorizing the Category B into Category B1 & B2 also has directions on mining of brick earth / ordinary earth and river sand mining. These provisions are as follows:

"Mining of minor minerals:

As of now, mining projects of minor minerals with less than 50 hectare of mining lease areas are categorized as Category 'B' as per Notification S.O. 2731 (E) dated 9th September 2013. Also vide O.M. No. L-11011/47/2011-IA-II (M) dated 24.06.2013, Guideliness has been issued regarding categorization of mining projects of brick earth and ordinary earth having lease areas less than 5 hectare as Category 'B2' subject to stipulations stated therein.

In the above backdrop, the projects of mining of minor minerals, categorized as Category 'B' are hereby categorized as 'B2' as per the following:

- (i) 'Brick Earth' / 'Ordinary Earth' mining projects having lease area less than 5 ha will be considered for granting EC as per the aforesaid Guideliness issued by MOEF on 24.06.2013.
- (ii) 'Brick Earth' / 'Ordinary Earth' mining projects with mining lease area more than equal to 5 ha but less than equal to 25 ha and all other minor , mineral mining projects with mining lease area < 25 ha, except for river sand mining projects will be appraised as Category 'B2' projects.



These projects will be appraised based on the following documents:

- (a) Form-1 as per the Appendix-I under the EIA Notification 2006
- (b) Pre-feasibility report of the project
- (c) Mining plan approved by the authorized agency of the concerned State Government.

Provided in case the mining lease area is likely to result into a cluster situation, i.e. if the periphery of one lease area is less than 500 meter from the periphery of another lease area and the total lease area equals or exceeds 25 ha, the activity shall become Category 'B1' Project under the EIA

Notification, 2006. In such a case, mining operations in any of the mine lease areas in the cluster will be allowed only if the environmental clearance has been obtained in respect of the cluster.

About river sand mining it says that:

(iii) No river sand mining project, with mine lease area less than 5 ha, may be considered for granting EC. The river sand mining projects with lease area more than equal to 5 ha but less than 25 ha will be categorized as 'B2'. In addition to the requirement of documents, as brought out above under sub-para (ii) above for appraisal, such projects will be considered subject to the following stipulations:

- (a) The mining activity shall be done manually. The depth of mining shall be restricted to 3 m / water level, whichever is less.
- (b) For carrying out mining in proximity to any bridge and / or embankment, appropriate safety zone shall be worked out on case to case basis to the satisfaction of SEAC / SEIAA, taking into account the structural parameters, locational aspects, flow rate etc., and no mining shall be carried out in the safety zone so worked out. No in-stream mining shall be allowed.
- (c) The mining plan approved by the authorized agency of the State Government shall inter-alia include study to show that the annual replenishment of sand in the mining lease area is sufficient to sustain mining operations at levels prescribed in the mining plan and that the transport infrastructure is adequate to transport the mines material. In case of transportation by road the transport vehicles will be covered with the tarpaulin to minimize dust/ sand particle emissions.
- (d) EC will be valid for mine lease period subject to a ceiling of 5 years.

Provided, in case the mining lease area is likely to result into a cluster situation i.e. if the periphery of one lease area is less than 1 km from the periphery of another lease area and total lease area equals to or exceeds 25 ha., the activity shall become Category 'B1' Projects under EIA Notification, 2006. In such a case, mining operation in any of the mine lease area in the cluster will be allowed only if the environment clearance has been obtained in respect of the cluster.



The NGT order dated 13.01.2015 in O.A. No. 123 of 2014 and M.A. No. 419 of 2014 has following directions on the issue of cluster: "In light of the judgment of the Supreme Court and what has emerged from the various cases that are subject matter of this Judgment, we direct the Ministry of Environment and Forest to formulate a uniform cluster policy in consultation with the States for permitting minor mineral mining activity including its regulatory regime, in accordance with law.

Notification S.O. 1559 (E) dated 25th June 2014 provides that "Any project or activity specified in Category 'B' will be appraised at the Central Level as Category 'A', if located in whole or in part within 5 km. from the boundary of: (i) Protected Areas; (ii) CEPI; (iii) ESA; (iv) I n t e r - s t a t e boundaries or international boundaries".

The NGT vide its order dated 13.01.2015 has quashed the Notification dated 9th September 2013, but similar provision on clusters exists in Notification dated 7th October 2014.

The EIA Notification 2006, as amended makes it clear that projects in respect of non-coal mine leases, where the area is more than equal to 50 hectares would require prior Environmental Clearance from MoEFCC, while the projects of area less than 50 hectares would be appraised for prior Environmental Clearance at the level of SEIAA.

The EIA Notification of 2006 in Clause 7 specifies the stages through which projects for grant of Environmental Clearance are required to be passed and processed. The stages include Screening, Scoping, Public Consultation and Appraisal, upon which, the Expert Appraisal Committee makes recommendation to the MoEF/SEIAA. Under 'Screening', this Clause 7 also provides for a further bifurcation of projects falling under category 'B' into 'B 1' and 'B 2'. The relevant part of Clause 7, dealing with this aspect, reads as under: "Stage (1) - Screening (Only for Category 'B' projects and activities): In case of Category 'B' projects or activities, this stage will entail the scrutiny of an application seeking prior environmental clearance made in Form 1 by the concerned State level Expert Appraisal Committee (SEAC) for determining whether or not the project or activity requires further environmental studies for preparation of an Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) for its appraisal prior to the grant of environmental clearance depending up on the nature and location specificity of the project . The projects requiring an Environmental Impact Assessment report shall be termed Category 'B1' and remaining projects shall be termed Category 'B2' and will not require an Environment Impact Assessment report. For categorization of projects into B1 or B2 except item 8 (b), the Ministry of Environment and Forests shall issue appropriate Guideliness from time to time."

The Ministry on 24th December, 2013, issued Office Memorandum for consideration of proposals for grant of Environmental Clearance regarding categorisation of Category 'B' projects into Category 'B1' and 'B2'. Mining of minor minerals had been separately dealt with in this Office Memorandum. Such area up to 25 hectares would be categorised as 'B 2' and such projects were to be considered, subject to the stipulations stated therein.



The EIA Notification, 2006 does not provide for issuance of Environment Clearance to Cluster of mines. It provides for EC to individual lease holders / project proponents. This position has also been upheld by the Hon'ble Supreme Court in its judgment of Vivek Bansal Vs. State of Haryana that EC should be applied for and granted to the individual lease holder.

There has been rising concerns about adverse impact of mining on small leases (less than 5 hectare) in case the numbers of such leases are large and they are located in close proximity to each other. This leads to the definition of Cluster. To avoid the rigors of environment impact assessment studies, environment management plan and the environment clearance there has been a tendency to break the leases into size which does not attract the provisions of environment impact assessment studies, environment management plan, public consultation and the environment clearance. In Deepak Kumar's case Hon'ble Supreme Court also encountered this situation and in its order dated 27.02.2012 mandated that no mining lease or renewal be done without environment clearance irrespective of size.

It is seen that the categorization of mines into 'B1' and 'B2' category in which Category 'B2' leases are being exempted from the requirement of Environment Impact Assessment, Environment Management Plan, and Public Consultation for grant of EC, in many cases now the mining leases are being given for 25 hectares or less. This defeats the purpose and intent of Hon'ble Supreme Court Judgment which orders environment clearance for all mining leases irrespective of size. The environment clearance without Environment Impact Assessment, Environment Management Plan, and Public Consultation does not serve the purpose of environment clearance which is to ensure environmentally sustainable and socially responsible mining. So if a cluster or individual lease size exceeds 5 hectare, the EIA/ EMP should be completed in the process of grant of prior environment clearance.

The EIA Notification, 2006 and subsequent amendments to that or any O.M. issued by the Ministry do not provide for procedures and Competent Authority for environment clearance for cluster. In a cluster there will mostly be situation where there are a number of different lease holders and as per the settled law the lease holder has to do the working of mine and the lease holder is the one who can apply for and get the environment clearance. The conditions stipulated in the environment clearance have to be complied by the EC holder and any violation of that empowers the authority to cancel the environment clearance or prosecute the EC holder if necessitated by the circumstances.

For cluster there is no mechanism about who will apply for EC, EC will be issued in whose name, and who will be responsible for compliance of EC conditions.

The intent of cluster assessment is to have a holistic knowledge of the impact on environment by different mines operating in close proximity of each other. There are also requirement of mitigative measures which need implementation in concerted manner by different EC holders of that cluster. To ensure that it is important that there should be an integrated Environment Impact Assessment /



Environment Management Plan for the cluster to be presented before the authority appraising the projects and considering the proposals for grant of EC. This integrated EIA/ EMP can be prepared by either the lease holder, group of lease holders, State or the State Agencies. This EIA/ EMP need to be prepared by the accredited consultants / Registered Qualified Persons of the State Governments. The application for EC and grant of EC should be done in the name of individual lease holders in the background of the integrated EIA/EMP report. The Competent Authority (SEIAA/ SEAC / EAC) will entertain individual lease holder's application for grant of EC to individual mining lease projects in that cluster in the name of lease holders. The conditions related to mitigative measures necessitated by the integrated EIA/EMP may run across more than one lease holder or EC holders, that should figure in each EC accordingly and its compliance be ensured by the individual EC holders.

The Hon'ble Supreme Court, NGT, SEAC/EAC and the Project Proponents have raised issue of cluster in mine lease allotment and environment clearance for the same, so following conditions need to be ensured for cluster of mines:

1. To address the concern of adverse impact of minor mineral mining on environment it is proposed that all mining activity including river sand mining (above 5 hectare individual or cluster) will need to prepare Environment Impact Assessment Report - and Environment Management Plan before grant of environment clearance. These reports (EIA /EMP) can be prepared by the State or State nominated Agency / the Project Proponent (s).
2. As can be seen from the data provided by the States most of the mining leases for minor minerals are of lease area less than 5 hectare. It is also reported that in hill states getting a stretch in river with area more than 5 hectare is very uncommon. So the size of lease for minor minerals including river sand mining will be determined by the States as per their circumstances.
3. The EIA Notification, 2006 does not provide for cluster EC, it provides for issuance of EC to individual project proponents and the same has also been upheld in the judgment of Hon'ble Supreme Court in Vijay Bansal vs. State of Haryana case. So EC will have to be applied for and issued to the individual project proponent.
4. A cluster shall be formed when the distance between the peripheries of one lease is less than 500 meters from the periphery of other lease in a homogeneous mineral area.
5. The mining of minor minerals is mostly in clusters. The Environment Impact Assessment or Environment Management Plan are required to be prepared for the entire cluster in order to capture all the possible externalities. These reports shall capture carrying capacity of the cluster, transportation and related issues, replenishment and recharge issues, geo-hydrological study of the cluster area. The Environment Impact Assessment or Environment Management Plan shall be prepared by the State or State nominated Agency or group of project proponents



in the Cluster or the project proponent in the cluster.

6. The individual lease holders in cluster can use the same Environment Impact Assessment or Environment Management Plan for application for environmental clearance. The cluster Environment Impact Assessment or Environment Management Plan shall be updated as per need keeping in view any significant change.
7. There shall be one public consultation for entire cluster after which the final Environment Impact Assessment or Environment Management Plan report for the cluster shall be prepared.
8. The details of cluster Environment Impact Assessment or Environment Management Plan shall be reflected in each environmental clearance in that cluster and District Expert Appraisal Committee (DEAC), SEAC, and EAC shall ensure that the mitigative measures emanating from the Environment Impact Assessment or Environment Management Plan study are fully reflected as environmental clearance conditions in the environmental clearance's of individual project proponents in that cluster.
9. As the sand is mostly mined from rivers and majority of the rivers which are important source of sand also form boundary between States, so because of General Conditions most of the sand mining projects become Category 'A' project. So the General Conditions will not apply in case of river sand and gravel mining projects on account of being in 5 kilometer of inter-state boundary.
10. The Committee headed by the District Magistrate or District Collector will be empowered to appraise and grant EC for mining leases up to 5 ha in case of individual lease and up to 25ha in case of cluster for sand mining.
11. In case the mining leases are in cluster (if periphery of one lease is within 500 meters), following are the categorization of projects:-
 - Category 'B2'Project: Cluster area of mine leases up to 5 ha and to be dealt at DEIAA/ DEAC level
 - Category 'B2'Project: Cluster area of Mine leases > 5 ha and < 25 ha with no individual lease > 5 ha and to be dealt at DEIAA/DEAC level
 - Category 'B1'Project: Cluster of mine leases of area > 25 hectares with individual lease size < 50ha and to be dealt at SEIAA/SEAC level
 - Category 'A' Project: Cluster of any size with any of the individual lease >50ha and to be dealt at MoEFCC/EAC level



The schematic presentation of requirements on Environmental Clearance of Sand Mining including cluster situation is detailed as below:-

Area of Lease (Hectare)	Category of Project	Requirement of EIA / EMP	Requirement of Public Hearing	Requirement of EC	Who can prepare EIA/ EMP	Who will apply for EC	Authority to appraise/ grant EC	Authority to monitor EC compliance
EC Proposal of Sand Mining in cluster situation								
Cluster area of mine leases up to 5 ha	'B2'	Form-1M, PFR and Approved Mine Plan	No	Yes	State, State Agency, Group of Project Proponents, Project Proponent	Project Proponent	DEAC/ DEIAA/	DEIAA SEIAA SPCB CPCB MoEFCC Agency nominated by MoEFCC
Cluster area of Mine leases > 5 ha and < 25 ha with no individual lease > 5 ha	'B2'	Form-I, PFR and Approved Mine Plan and one EMP for all leases in the Cluster	No	Yes	State, State Agency, Group of Project Proponents, Project Proponent	Project Proponent	DEAC/ DEIAA/	
Cluster of mine leases of area > 25 hectares with individual lease size < 50ha	'B1'	Yes	Yes	Yes	State, State Agency, Group of Project Proponents, Project Proponent	Project Proponent	SEAC/ SEIAA	



Cluster of any size with any of the individual lease > 50ha	'A'	Yes	Yes	Yes	State, State Agency, Group of Project Proponents, Project Proponent	Project Proponent	EAC/ MoEFCC	
---	------------	-----	-----	-----	---	-------------------	-------------	--



MANAGEMENT OF SAND DEPOSITED AFTER FLOOD ON AGRICULTURAL FIELD OF FARMERS

The Standing Committee on Water Resources on issues, concerning flood management, compensation, and status of ownership of submerged and eroded land in the country including compensation to farmers for loss of their crops destroyed by floods and right to disposal of the sand left in the fields of farmers in its meeting held on 29.04.2015 made observations on this subject.

The Committee observed that pursuant to Hon'ble Supreme Court of India decision in "Deepak Kumar Case" in 2012, regulations were framed by the Ministry of Mines to guide environmental clearance of minor minerals. ... The Committee, therefore, desires the Ministry of Water Resources, River Development and Ganga Rejuvenation to work in close coordination with the Ministry of Mines and Environment, Forest and Climate Change to frame regulations / Guidelines in this regard expeditiously.

Mining of Sand

The Committee further observed that due to the floods, the agricultural land of farmer is destroyed and rendered infertile. Further the farmer loses his livelihood as the produce of his land is destroyed by flood and become unsalable. The farmer is also deprived of the right of lifting sand from his land. He is therefore, left helpless and destitute and leave their land in search of job.

The Committee observes that "mining operation" means any operation undertaken for the purpose of winning any mineral. Accordingly, if desilting is undertaken perse with the objective of winning a mineral then only it will be construed as a mining operation. Apparently, if the desilting is undertaken not for winning any mineral, it will not be construed as mining operation and therefore, the farmer can remove the sand from the land without requiring the requisite permits. However, the Committee strongly feels that the farmer be given the right to use and dispose-off the sand accumulated over their land post flood, by incorporating the necessary provisions in the Mines and Mineral (Development and Regulation) Act, 1957".

Removal of sand from the agricultural field by the owner farmer of the land from environment point of view will not be considered as mining operation and its removal and disposal can be allowed without the requirement of environment clearance till it is done only to the extent of reclaiming the agricultural land. The sand deposited after flood only be removed, so no mining / digging below the ground level is allowed. For removing sand in case where private land has gone into the river due to erosion, the requirement of mining lease and environment clearance will continue. This operation



of removal of sand deposited on agricultural field should be done after a mapping of deposition is done by the Land Management Committee of the Gram Panchayat. The sand so deposited post flood can be removed by the farmer owning the land / group of farmers affected by this post flood sand deposition or the Gram Panchayat. Customary rights to remove and dispose off the sand should be given to the farmer affected by deposition of sand on account of sudden flood in his agricultural land.



MINING OF SAND FROM AGRICULTURAL FIELD

This practice is prevalent in Haryana, where the top layer of soil varying between 1 and 2 meters is removed and stacked separately and thereafter the sand deposit which may be 10-15 meter deep is mined. After removing the sand layer up to a maximum depth of 09 meters, the top soil stacked is spread out on the field and the same is brought under the cultivation. Though the level of this land (mined out area) is lowered to the depth of the excavation and in initial years of cultivation the productivity is low, but the productivity of the fields improves with continued cultivation and addition of organic manure in the field. In Haryana some leases are of large area (ranging from 1000 hectare to 2000 hectare) the agricultural fields and river bed both are included in the same lease for mining.

The following recommendations should be kept in mind for mining in such leases:

1. Mining of sand in such mine leases will require environment clearance.
2. The lease should be of sand mining either from the agricultural field or river. In same lease both type of area should not be included.
3. The sand mining from agricultural field is being done in Haryana for a long time and it can be done in a more sustainable manner without adverse impact on agricultural productivity, if proper environmental safeguards are taken.
4. The slope of mining area adjacent to agricultural fields should be proper (preferably 45-60 degree) and adequate gap (minimum 10 feet) be left from adjacent agricultural field to avoid erosion and scouring.

CUSTOMARY RIGHT ON SAND MINING

The native people have their long held customary rights to take silt, sand & soil from their tanks and nearby rivers for their use or community works in the village in almost all the States in some form or the other.

Next to the reserved forests, tanks and rivers are the biggest common properties in India. Most of the village tanks are 'government properties' with some exceptions of privately held tanks. Land revenue department, irrigation department and forest department is given powers to deal with property right' and hence protecting all tanks and rivers preventing damages including encroachments is their responsibility. The local villagers were given 'customary rights' under the Revenue Department Orders, and other laws related to Panchayats and Easements to take sand, soil and earth for agricultural and domestic purposes without seeking any permission from anyone. The States strive to keep these customary rights to use such resources like soil and sand for individuals work and community work in the village intact without requirement of any permit and clearance. These customary rights need to be protected and respected.



DESILTING OF RESERVOIRS / BARRAGES / ANNECUTS / LAKES / CANALS

These structures are generally in possession and maintenance of Irrigation Department / Minor Irrigation Department / PHED of State Governments. The dams and reservoirs can be a significant source of sand. Many such structures are silted and their water holding capacity has gone down considerably. In some instances to compensate for silted capacity raising of height of dam or construction of new structures is proposed which further leads to submergence of new areas of agricultural field and forests. Taking up desilting of such projects can serve dual purpose of increasing the water holding capacity and making available the sand for other usage. In some States the Irrigation Department is permitted to use it for the departmental works free of charge and balance can be disposed of in market after paying the due royalty. A detailed study is required to be carried out to verify economic viability and environmental sustainability before contemplating dredging of storage reservoirs for sand / gravel mining.

The de-silting of reservoir, dredging for upkeep and maintenance of structures, channels and averting natural disasters will not be treated as mining for the purpose of environmental clearance.

The Ministry of Water Resources (MoWR) view on desiltation from flood control point of view is as follows:

A multidisciplinary Committee (Mittal Committee) under the chairmanship of Dr. B.K. Mittal, former Chairman, Central Water Commission was constituted by MoWR, vide letter dated 08.10.2001 to identify cause and extent of siltations in rivers, suggest measures to minimize siltation, examine as to whether desilting is a technically feasible means to minimize magnitude of flood in rivers, suggest appropriate technology/ methods of desilting of rivers, propose a realistic operational programme in a time bound manner and other related aspects. The committee studied in respect of few sites on Ganga, Brahmaputra, Godavari, Krishna etc., and inter-alia concluded that:

- i) Siltation in river is not pronounced and alarming;
- ii) Desilting of rivers for flood control is not an economically viable solution;
- iii) Dredging in general has been found to be inadequate and should not be resorted to, particularly in major rivers;
- iv) There are, of course, some locations such as tidal rivers, confluence points with narrow constrictions and the like which can be tackled by desilting after thorough examination and techno-economic justification;
- v) Selective dredging is suggested depending upon local conditions; and
- vi) Desilting of rivers can marginally minimize the magnitude of floods and be effective only for a short period.

Thus, desilting in general is not feasible technically, due to several reasons like non-sustainability, non-availability of vast land required for disposal of dredged material etc. This cannot be viewed in isolation of other approaches to manage floods. Desilting of rivers in vulnerable reaches may be suggested based on model study, if it is found techno-economically viable. For navigation purposes, the river reaches in the water ways path may be dredged to have minimum depth of water.



MINING PLAN

The Environment Clearance shall be given to only those mining leases which have mine plan approved by the Competent Authority designated by the States. Modification of the mining plan during operation will also need approval of the Competent Authority. The Mining Plan shall be prepared by the Recognised Qualified Persons (RQP). The person to be recognized for preparing the mining plan should be a holding a degree of Mining Engineering, Environmental Engineering or a post graduate degree in Geology granted by a University established or incorporated by or under a Central Act or a State Act including any institutions recognized by the UGC or any equivalent qualification granted by any University or institution outside India and have a professional experience of three years of working in a supervisory capacity in the field of mining after obtaining a degree. The States will devise their own mechanism of selection and empanelment of RQPs. A mining plan should be valid for a period of 5 years, which can be renewed further.

EVALUATING THE IMPACT OF SAND MINING

To assess the impact of mining and effect of remedial measures can be assessed through monitoring. This is also required for mid-course corrections. Monitoring will provide data to evaluate the upstream and downstream effects of sand and gravel extraction activities, and long-term changes. A brief report summarizing the annual results of the physical and biological monitoring should document the evolution of the sites over time, and the cumulative effects of sand and gravel extraction. The summary should also recommend any modification of extraction rates needed to minimize impacts of extraction.

Sand Replenishment, Geomorphology and Hydrology:

Physical monitoring requirements of sand and gravel extraction activities should include surveyed channel cross-sections, longitudinal profiles, bed material measurements, geomorphic maps, and discharge and sediment transport measurements. The physical data will illustrate bar replenishment and any changes in channel morphology, bank erosion, or particle size.

In addition to local monitoring for replenishment at specific mining sites, monitoring of the entire reach through the estuary will provide information on the cumulative response of the system to sand and gravel extraction. For example, it is important for downstream bars and the estuary to receive sufficient sand and gravel to maintain estuarine structure and function. Because the elevation of the bed of the channel is variable from year to year, a reach-based approach to monitoring will provide a larger context for site-specific changes. If long-term monitoring data show that there is a reach-scale trend of bed lowering (on bars or in the thalweg), the extraction could be limited.

Cross-sections:

Surveyed channel cross-sections should be located at permanently documented sites upstream, downstream and within the extraction area. Cross-sections intended to show reach- scale changes



should be consistently located over geomorphic features such as at the head of riffles, across the deepest part of pools, or across particular types of channel bars.

Cross-section spacing should be close enough to define the morphology of the river channel. Cross-section data should be surveyed in March or April to evaluate changes that may occur during the flooding season.

Cross-section data should be collected over the reach to the estuary, and locally upstream, downstream, and within each mining site. This long-term monitoring data should be collected and analyzed even if no mining occurs in order to understand and estimate the sand budget of the river reach.

Photo-documentation:

Photographs of the project sites should be taken prior to excavation to document the baseline conditions, and again during each monitoring session. Photos should be taken twice a year. Photos of structures nearby like outfalls / off-takes, intakes, bridges and other structures may also be regularly taken.

Groundwater Level:

Monitoring wells should be established adjacent to each off-channel floodplain excavation to record changes in ground water levels. Measurements should be taken monthly. This should help analyse surface water and ground water interaction along the reach.

Extent and Quality of Riparian Vegetation:

Document the extent and quality of riparian vegetation, including successional status, and any increase in disturbance indicators (non-native plants). The extent of riparian habitat can be determined utilising aerial photos. Habitat quality data, i.e., successional status and species composition, must be determined through field reconnaissance.

Riparian Vegetation Maps:

Develop yearly maps of the sensitive habitat areas and document their aerial extent over time. These maps may be combined with the geomorphic maps. Monitor sites identified as sensitive for disturbance in excess of expected geomorphic trends - i.e., massive bank wasting up or downstream from an active mine site. Monitor sand and gravel mining impacts which may translate up and downstream, causing accelerated erosion of sensitive zones and impacting the ability of new habitat to form due to excessive scour or sedimentation.

This monitoring / documentation should be done by the EC holders and will be regularly checked and assessed by the DEIAA for corrective steps in time. The DEIAA should review the status of monitoring and documentation data of each mining site especially for sand mining once in a year.



MONITORING SYSTEM FOR SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING

The implementation of these Guidelines on Sustainable Sand Mining is not possible till States create a robust mechanism to monitor the mining operation and measure the mined out mineral. The entire exercise of Environment Impact Assessment and Environment Management Plan aims towards making the mining process environmentally sustainable. The Environment Clearance letter indicates the EC capacity that is the quantity of material which can be mined in a year. If this quantity is not measured, and much more mineral than envisaged in the EC is mined out then the entire process of EC is rendered futile. Keeping above objective in mind it is required of the State / State Agencies to create and establish a robust system to monitor and measure the mined out mineral at each lease location and its transportation in State.

The State Governments have tried various methods for monitoring the sand mining in their areas, the main feature of which generally has been through Transport Permits (T.P.). The printing of Transport Permits on security paper, invisible ink mark, fugitive ink background, VOID pantograph and Unique Barcode are some of the tools used by the States. These tools need to be backed by suitable software and dedicated websites with security certifications at different levels.

The system proposed is that States should issue Transport Permit. Bar code on the T.P. when scanned using the system, will generate a unique invoice number. The bidder has to enter destination, distance between plot and destination, vehicle number etc in the system. After scanning, unique bar code number; invoice date & time and validity date & time is sent to the bidder, which need to be written on T.P. Validity of T.P. is calculated based on distance between plot and destination. After validity time is over the T.P. stands invalid. The officers involved in monitoring should be provided with the android application using which the T.P. can be checked anywhere on road. As soon as the bar code on T.P. gets scanned through using android application, all details of T.P. such as plot details, vehicle details, validity time etc. should get fetched from server. This means, if anything is re-written on T.P. and attempt is made to reuse the same, it can be traced immediately. Registering of T.P. on server can be done using website, using android application (smartphone with internet) or even through SMS (smartphone without internet). This implies that TP can be registered on server even if only mobile phone range is available on plot. Various reports can be generated using the system showing daily lifting reports and user performance report. This way the vehicles carrying sand can be tracked from source to destination.



MONITORING SYSTEM FOR SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING

PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING OF SAND MINING OR RIVER BED MINING

1. The security feature of Transport Permit shall be as under:

- (a) Printed on Indian Banks' Association (IBA) approved Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) Code paper.
- (b) Unique Barcode.
- (c) Unique Quick Response (QR) code.
- (d) Fugitive Ink Background.
- (e) Invisible Ink Mark.
- (f) Void Pantograph.
- (g) Watermark.

2. Requirement at Mine Lease Site:

- (a) Small Size Plot (Up to 5 hectare): Android Based Smart Phone.
- (b) Large Size Plots (More than 5 hectare): CCTV camera, Personal Computer (PC), Internet Connection, Power Back up.
- (c) Access control of mine lease site.
- (d) Arrangement for weight or approximation of weight of mined out mineral on basis of volume of the trailer of vehicle used.

3. Scanning of Transport Permit or Receipt and Uploading on Server:

- (a) Website: Scanning of receipt on mining site can be done through barcode scanner and computer using the software;
- (b) Android Application: Scanning on mining site can be done using Android Application using smart phone. It will require internet availability on SIM card;
- (c) SMS: Transport Permit or Receipt shall be uploaded on server even by sending SMS through mobile. Once Transport Permit or Receipt get uploaded, an unique invoice code gets generated with its validity period.



4. **Proposed working of the system:**

The State Mining Department should print the Transport Permit or Receipt with security features enumerated at Paragraph 1 above and issue them to the mine lease holder through the District Collector. Once these Transport Permits or Receipts are issued, they would be uploaded on the server against that mine lease area. Each receipt should be preferably with pre-fixed quantity, so the total quantity gets determined for the receipts issued.

When the Transport Permit or Receipt barcode gets scanned and invoice is generated, that particular barcode gets used and its validity time is recorded on the server. So all the details of transporting of mined out material can be captured on the server and the Transport Permit or Receipt cannot be reused.

5. **Checking On Route:**

The staff deployed for the purpose of checking of vehicles carrying mined mineral should be in a position to check the validity of Transport Permit or Receipt by scanning them using website, Android Application and SMS.

6. **Breakdown of Vehicle:**

In case the Vehicle breakdown, the validity of Transport Permit or Receipt shall be extended by sending SMS by driver in specific format to report breakdown of vehicle. The server will register this information and register the breakdown. The State can also establish a call centre, which can register breakdowns of such vehicles and extend the validity period. The subsequent restart of the vehicle also should be similarly reported to the server or call centre.

7. **Tracking of Vehicles:**

The route of vehicle from source to destination can be tracked through the system using check points, RFID Tags, and GPS tracking.

8. **Alerts or Report Generation and Action Review:**

The system will enable the authorities to develop periodic report on different parameters like daily lifting report, vehicle log or history, lifting against allocation, and total lifting. The system can be used to generate auto mails or SMS. This will enable the District Collector or District Magistrate to get all the relevant details and shall enable the authority to block the scanning facility of any site found to be indulged in irregularity. Whenever any authority intercepts any vehicle transporting illegal sand, it shall get registered on the server and shall be mandatory for the officer to fill in the report on action taken. Every intercepted vehicle shall be tracked.

The monitoring of mined out mineral, environmental clearance conditions and enforcement of Environment Management Plan will be ensured by the DEIAA, SEIAA and the State Pollution Control Board or Committee. The monitoring arrangements envisaged above shall be put in place. The monitoring of enforcement of environmental clearance conditions shall be done by the Central Pollution Control Board, Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change and the agency nominated by the Ministry for the purpose.



ADMINISTRATIVE STRUCTURE FOR ENVIRONMENT CLEARANCE AND ENSURING COMPLIANCE OF EC CONDITIONS

An no mining in allowed without Envirnomental Clearance. The process of EC involves preparation of EIA/EMP, PER and mine plan.

The EIA/EMP can be prepared by the State Government or any agency of the State, group of project proponents in the cluster or the individual project proponent. The EIA / EMP can be prepared by the accredited consultants or the Registered Qualified Person(s) / agencies selected by the States.

DISTRICT ENVIRONMENT IMPACT ASSESSMENT AUTHORITY

The Central Government has constituted the District Level Environment Impact Assessment Authority (DEIAA), for grant of environmental clearance for Category 'B2' Projects for mining of minor minerals, for all the districts in the country.

For, minor minerals including sand and gravel mining lease of area up to 5 hectare in case of individual lease and up to 25 ha in case of cluster for sand mining, the grant of EC will be done by the District Environment Impact Assessment Authority (DEIAA) headed by the District Magistrate or District Collector. This Authority will be responsible for proper and sustainable management of sand mining in the district. The Authority will be responsible for designating the area / stretch in river suitable for mining in the district and also identifying the area / stretch in river prohibited for sand mining. The Authority will ensure clear demarcation of mining site, its documentation, and ensuring that no mining takes place without EIA / EMP and EC of the mining site.

The Chairperson and official members of the Authority for the districts should hold office during their tenure in the district on said posts and the expert member shall hold office for a period of three years from the date of nomination by the Competent Authority. The Committee shall meet at least once in a month.

The District Environment Impact Assessment Authority (DEIAA) :

The DEIAA will have following composition :

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1. District Magistrate or District Collector of the district | Chairperson |
| 2. Senior most Divisional Forest Officer in the district | Member |
| 3. An expert member to be nominated by the Divisional Commissioner or Chief Conservator of the Forest | Member |
| 4. Sub-Divisional Magistrate or Sub-Divisional Officer of the district head quarter | Member-Secretary |



DISTRICT LEVEL EXPERT APPRAISAL COMMITTEE:

The District Level Expert Appraisal Committee (DEAC) will appraise the cases and make recommendations to the District Environment Impact Assessment Authority for environmental clearance. This Committee will also make recommendations / suggestions on the District Survey Report to the DEIAA. The DEAC will have following composition:

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 1. Senior most Executive Engineer, Irrigation Department | Chairperson |
| 2. Senior most Sub-Divisional Officer (Forest) | Member |
| 3. A representative of Remote Sensing Department or Geology Department or State Ground Water Department to be nominated by the District Magistrate or District Collector | Member |
| 4. Occupational health expert or Medical Officer to be nominated by the District Magistrate or District Collector | Member |
| 5. Engineer from Zila Parishad | Member |
| 6. A representative of State Pollution Control Board or Committee | Member |
| 7. An expert to be nominated by the Divisional Commissioner or Chief Conservator of Forest | Member |
| 8. An expert to be nominated by the Divisional Commissioner or Chief Conservator of Forest | Member |
| 9. An expert to be nominated by the Divisional Commissioner or Chief Conservator of Forest | Member |
| 10. Senior most Assistant Engineer, Public Works Department | Member |
| 11. Assistant Director or Deputy Director or District Mines Officer or Geologist in the district in that order | Member- Secretary |

The DEAC will meet at least once a month, depending on the work load the frequency of meetings can be decided by the Chairperson of DEAC and Chairperson, DEIAA.

Each proposal for the mining lease under consideration for environmental clearance in the district will be inspected on-site by the Sub-Divisional Level Committee headed by the SDM.



The Sub-Divisional Committee should comprise of following officers:

Sub-Divisional Magistrate	Chairperson
Sub-Divisional Officer, Forest/ Assistant Conservator of Forest/ Forest Range Officer	Member
Representative of State Pollution Control Board	Member
SDO, Irrigation Department	Member
Geologist or Assistant Geologist or Mining Officer / Mining Inspector	Member

The presence of at least three members will be needed for inspection. This Committee shall submit its report within 15 days from the receipt of the proposal.

The monitoring of EC conditions and enforcement of EMP will be ensured by the District Collector and the, State Pollution Control Board. The monitoring of enforcement of EC conditions can also be done by the Central Pollution Control Board, Ministry of Environment, Forest & Climate Change and the agency nominated by the Ministry for the purpose.

Schematic Presentation of Requirements on Environmental Clearance of Sand Mining including cluster situation

Area of Lease (Hectare)	Category of Project	Requirement of EIA / EMP	Requirement of Public Hearing	Requirement of EC	Who can prepare EIA/ EMP	Who will apply for EC	Authority to appraise/ grant EC	Authority to monitor EC compliance
EC Proposal of Sand Mining on the basis of individual mine lease								
0 - 5ha	'B2'	Form - 1M, PFR and Approved Mine Plan	No	Yes	Project Proponent	Project Proponent	DEAC/ DEIAA	DEIAA SEIAA SPCB CPCB MoEFCC Agency nominated by MoEFCC



> 5 ha and < 25 ha	'B2'	Form-I, PFR and Approved Mine Plan and EMP	No	Yes	Project Proponent	Project Proponent	SEAC / SEIAA	DEIAA SEIAA SPCB CPCB MoEFCC Agency nominated by MoEFCC
≥ 25ha and < 50ha	'B1'	Yes	Yes	Yes	Project Proponent	Project Proponent	SEAC / SEIAA	
≥ 50 ha	'A'	Yes	Yes	Yes	Project Proponent	Project Proponent	SEAC / SEIAA	
EC Proposal of Sand Mining in cluster situation								
Cluster area of mine leases up to 5 ha	'B2'	Form - 1M, PFR and Approved Mine Plan	No	Yes	State, State Agency, Group of Project Proponents, Project Proponent	Project Proponent	DEAC/ DEIAA/	DEIAA SEIAA SPCB CPCB MoEFCC Agency nominated by MoEFCC
Cluster area of Mine leases > 5 ha and < 25 ha with no individual lease > 5 ha	'B2'	Form -I, PFR and Approved Mine Plan and one EMP for all leases in the Cluster	No	Yes	State, State Agency, Group of Project Proponents, Project Proponent	Project Proponent	DEAC/ DEIAA/	



Cluster of mine leases of area \geq 25 hectares with individual lease size $<$ 50ha	'B1'	Yes	Yes	Yes	State, State Agency, Group of Project Proponents, Project Proponent	Project Proponent	SEAC/ SEIAA	
Cluster of any size with any of the individual lease \geq 50ha	'A'	Yes	Yes	Yes	State, State Agency, Group of Project Proponents, Project Proponent	Project Proponent	EAC/ MoEFCC	

General Conditions will not apply on account of inter- state boundaries for river sand mining leases.



EXEMPTION OF CERTAIN CASES FROM BEING CONSIDERED AS MINING FOR THE PURPOSE OF REQUIREMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CLEARANCE

Keeping in view the purpose, maintenance of infrastructure, abatement of disasters, customary easement and property rights, it is felt that following cases may not be treated as mining for the purpose of requirement of environmental clearance. The following cases shall not require prior environmental clearance, namely:-

1. Extraction of ordinary clay or sand, manually, by the Kumhars (Potter) to prepare earthen pots, lamp, toys, etc. as per their customs.
2. Extraction of ordinary clay or sand, manually, by earthen tile makers who prepare earthen tiles.
3. Removal of sand deposits on agricultural field after flood by farmers.
4. Customary extraction of sand and ordinary earth from sources situated in Gram Panchayat for personal use or community work in village.
5. Community works like de-silting of village ponds or tanks, construction of village roads, ponds, bunds undertaken in Mahatama Gandhi National Rural Employment and Guarantee Schemes, other Government sponsored schemes, and community efforts.
6. Dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river, and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management.
7. Traditional occupational work of sand by Vanjara and Oads in Gujarat vide notification number GU/90(16)/MCR-2189(68)/5-CHH, dated the 14th February, 1990 of the Government of Gujarat.
8. Digging of well for irrigation or drinking water.
9. Digging of foundation for buildings not requiring prior environmental clearance.
10. Excavation of ordinary earth or clay for plugging of any breach caused in canal, nala, drain, water body, etc., to deal with any disaster or flood like situation upon orders of District Collector or District Magistrate.
11. Activities declared by State Government under legislations or rules as non- mining activity with concurrence of the Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change, Government of India.



STANDARD ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS FOR SAND MINING

Impact Category	S.No.	Environmental Conditions
Stakeholder Engagement	1	In the case of private land not owned by the lease holder an affidavit should be obtained regarding consent of the concerned land owner (s) for carrying out the mining operation.
	2	Stakeholder awareness and ability to raise concerns and getting it to be addressed.
	3	Implementation of Action Plan on the issues raised during the Public Hearing. The Proponent shall complete all the tasks as per the Action Plan submitted with the budgetary provisions during the Public Hearing.
	4	Having valid lease and all the permits is very much needed.
	5	To establish a Monitoring Committee including Local Panchayat, to check on traffic due to transportation and submit an annual report on the same.
	6	The directions given by the Hon'ble Supreme Court of India vide order dated 27.02.2012 in Deepak Kumar case [SLP(C) Nos. 19628-19629 of 2009] and order dated 05.08.2013 of the Hon'ble National Green Tribunal in application No. 171/2013 may be strictly followed.
	7	All the provisions made and restrictions imposed as covered in the Minor Mineral Rule, shall be complied with, particularly regarding Environment Management Practices and its fund management and Payment of compensation to the land owners.
Sustainable Mining Practices	8	District level Survey Report should be prepared and area suitable for mining and area prohibited for mining be identified.
	9	The depth of mining in Riverbed shall not exceed one meter or water level whichever is less, provided that where the Joint Inspection Committee certifies about excessive deposit or over accumulation of mineral in certain reaches requiring channelization, it can go up to 3 meters on defined reaches of the River.
	10	No River sand mining be allowed in rainy season.
	11	To submit annual replenishment report certified by an authorized agency. In case the replenishment is lower than the approved rate of production,



		then the mining activity / production levels shall be decreased / stopped accordingly till the replenishment is completed.
	12	Ultimate working depth shall be up to 3.0 m from Riverbed level and not less than one meter from the water level of the River channel whichever is reached earlier. In hilly terrain this depth be preferably restricted to one meter.
	13	In River flood plain mining a buffer of 3 meter to be left from the River bank for mining.
	14	In mining from agricultural field a buffer of 3 meter to be left from the adjacent field.
	15	Mining shall be done in layers of 1 meter depth to avoid ponding effect and after first layer is excavated, the process will be repeated for the next layers.
	16	To maintain safety and stability of Riverbanks i.e. 3 meter or 10% of the width of the River whichever is more will be left intact as no mining zone.
	17	No stream should be diverted for the purpose of sand mining. No natural water course and/ or water resources are obstructed due to mining operations.
	18	No blasting shall be resorted to in River mining and without permission at any other place.
	19	Depending upon the location, thickness of sand, deposition, agricultural land/Riverbed, the method of mining may be manual, semi-mechanized or mechanized; however, manual method of mining shall be preferred over any other method.
Identification and Preparation of Mining Site	20	Mining should be done only in area / stretch identified in the District Level Survey Report suitable for mining and so certified by the Sub-Divisional Level Committee after site visit.
	21	Mining should begin only after pucca pillar marking the boundary of lease area is erected at the cost of the lease holder after certification by the mining official and its geo coordinates are made available to the District Level Committee.
	22	The top soil in case of surface land mining shall be stored temporarily in an earmarked site and concurrently used for land reclamation.



Monitoring the Mining of Mineral and its Transportation	23	The EC holder shall keep a correct account of quantity of mineral mined out, dispatched from the mine, mode of transport, registration number of vehicle, person in-charge of vehicle and mine plan. This should be produced before officers of Central Government and State for inspection.
	24	For each mining lease site the access should be controlled in a way that vehicles carrying mineral from that area are tracked and accounted for.
	25	The State / District Level Environment Committee should use technology like Bar Coding, Information and Communications Technology (ICT), Web based and ICT enabled services, mobile SMS App etc. to account for weight of mineral being taken out of the lease area and the number of trucks moving out with the mineral.
	26	There should be regular monitoring of the mining activities in the State to ensure effective compliance of stipulated EC conditions and of the provisions under the Minor Mineral Concessions Rules framed by the State Government.
Noise Management	27	Noise arising out of mining and processing shall be abated and controlled at source to keep within permissible limit.
	28	Restricted working hours. Sand mining operation has to be carried out between 6 am to 7 pm.
Air Pollution and Dust Management	29	The pollution due to transportation load on the environment will be effectively controlled and water sprinkling will also be done regularly.
	30	Air Pollution due to dust, exhaust emission or fumes during mining and processing phase should be controlled and kept in permissible limits specified under environmental laws.
	31	The mineral transportation shall be carried out through covered trucks only and the vehicles carrying the mineral shall not be overloaded. Wheel washing facility should be installed and used.
Management of Visual Impact	32	The mining operations are to be done in a systematic manner so that the operations shall create a major visual impact on the site.
Bio-Diversity Protection	33	Restoration of flora affected by mining should be done immediately. Twice the number of trees destroyed by mining to be planted preferably of indigenous species. Each EC holder should plant and maintain for lease period at least 5 trees per hectare in area near lease.
	34	No mining lease shall be granted in the forest area without forest clearance in accordance with the provisions of the Forest Conservation Act, 1980 and the rules made thereunder.



	35	Protection of turtle and bird habitats shall be ensured.
	36	No felling of tree near quarry is allowed. For mining lease within 10km of the National Park / Sanctuary or in Eco-Sensitive Zone of the Protected Area, recommendation of Standing Committee of National Board of Wild Life (NBWL) have to be obtained as per the Hon'ble Supreme Court order in I.A. No. 460 of 2004.
	37	Spring sources should not be affected due to mining activities. Necessary Protection measures are to be incorporated.
Management of Instability and Erosion	38	Removal, stacking and utilization of top soil in mining are should be ensured. Where top soil cannot be used concurrently, it shall be stored separately for future use keeping in view that the bacterial organism should not die and should be spread nearby area.
	39	The EC should stipulate conditions for adequate steps to check soil erosion and control debris flow etc. by constructing engineering structures
	40	Use of oversize material to control erosion and movement of sediments
	41	No overhangs shall be allowed to be formed due to mining and mining shall not be allowed in area where subsidence of rocks is likely to occur due to steep angle of slope.
	42	No extraction of stone / boulder / sand in landslide prone areas.
	43	Controlled clearance of riparian vegetation to be undertaken
Waste Management	44	Site clearance and tidiness is very much needed to have less visual impact of mining.
	45	Dumping of waste shall be done in earmarked places as approved in Mining Plan.
	46	Rubbish burial shall not be done in the Rivers.
Pollution Prevention	47	The EC holder shall take all possible precautions for the protection of environment and control of pollution.
	48	Effluent discharge should be kept to the minimum and it should meet the standards prescribed.
Protection of Infrastructure	49	Mining shall not be undertaken in a mining lease located in 200-500 meter of bridge, 200 meter upstream and downstream of water supply / irrigation scheme, 100 meters from the edge of National Highway and railway line, 50 meters from a reservoir, canal or building, 25 meter from the edge of State Highway and 10 meters from the edge of other



		roads except on special exemption by the Sub-Divisional level Joint Inspection Committee.
	50	For carrying out mining in proximity to any bridge or embankment, appropriate safety zone (not less than 200 meters) should be worked out on case to case basis, taking into account the structural parameters, location aspects and flow rate, and no mining should be carried out in the safety zone so worked out.
	51	Mining activities shall not be done for mine lease where mining can cause danger to site of flood protection works, places of cultural, religious, historical, and archeological importance.
Enhancement Road Safety	52	Vehicles used for transportation of sand are to be permitted only with of fitness and PUC Certificates.
	53	Junction at takeoff point of approach road with main road be properly developed with proper width and geometry required for safe movement of traffic by concession holder at his own cost.
	54	Project Proponent shall ensure that the road may not be damaged due to transportation of the mineral; and transport of minerals will be as per IRC Guideliness with respect to complying with traffic congestion and density.
	55	No stacking allowed on road side along National Highways.
Closure and Reclamation of Mined Out Area	56	The Project Proponent shall undertake phased restoration, reclamation and rehabilitation of land affected by mining and completes this work before abandonment of mine.
	57	Restoration, reclamation and rehabilitation in cluster should be done systematically and jointly by each EC holder in that cluster. This should be appropriately reflected as EC condition in each EC in cluster.
	58	Site specific plan with eco-restoration should be in place and implemented.
Health and Safety	59	Health and safety of workers should be taken care of.
	60	Transport of mineral will not be done through villages / habitations.
	61	The Project Proponent shall make arrangement for drinking water, first aid facility (along with species specific anti-venom provisioning) in case of emergency for the workers.



	62	Project Proponent shall implement the Disaster Management Plan if the mine lease area is located in Seismic Zone-IV. Project Proponent shall appoint a Committee to have a check over any disaster to warn workers well before for the safety of the workers. Emergency helpline number will be displayed at all levels.
	63	Project Proponent shall appoint an Occupational Health Specialist for Regular and Periodical medical examination of the workers engaged in the Project and records maintained; also, Occupational health check-ups for workers having some ailments like BP, diabetes, habitual smokers, etc. shall be undertaken once in six months and necessary remedial/preventive measures taken accordingly. Recommendations of National Institute for Labour for ensuring good occupational environment for mine workers would also be adopted.
Monitoring the Impact of Mining	64	The Project Proponent shall report monitoring data on replenishment, traffic management, levels of production, River Bank erosion and maintenance of Road etc.
Mineral Conservation	65	Use of alternate material such as M-sand in place of natural River sand shall be encouraged in order to reduce stress on natural eco-system.



APPENDIX: TABLE - 1

REVENUE FROM SAND MINING IN STATES / UTs

(Rs. in crores)

Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	2012 - 2013	2013 - 2014	2014 - 2015
01	Andaman & Nicobar	0.073	0	0
02	Arunachal Pradesh	7	8	5
03	National Capital Territory of Delhi	0	0	
04	Himachal Pradesh	0.70	0.35	0.07
05	Jharkhand	4.25	3.04	0.07
06	Karnataka	23.74	15.33	25.99
07	Madhya Pradesh	184.93	179.41	172.53
08	Meghalaya	14.50	15.88	15.50 (as forest royalty from govt. contractors)
09	Mizoram	0.018	0.0475	0.0861
10	Puducherry	0.80	0.20	0.03
11	Rajasthan	173.36	252.06	134
12	Tamil Nadu	188.50	117.73	109.10
13	Uttar Pradesh	97.27	166.45	168.38

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



APPENDIX: TABLE - 2

NUMBER OF MINING LEASES IN STATE

Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	In stream	Flood Plain	Sea Shore	Agricultural field	River	Total
01	Andaman & Nicobar						Nil
02	Andhra Pradesh						Nil
03	Haryana	5	12		7		31
04	Jammu & Kashmir					650	650
05	Jharkhand	10				387	397
06	Lakshadweep					1090	1090
07	Manipur						NIL
08	Meghalaya						NIL
09	Odisha						NIL
10	Punjab	2 + 80 Temporary Working Permit				73	155
11	Sikkim		85				85
12	Tripura	21	244		5		270

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



APPENDIX: TABLE - 3

**AVERAGE SIZE OF SAND MINING LEASES IN
STATE / UT: 2014-15**

(In Hectare)

Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	AVERAGE SIZE	SMALLEST MINING LEASE AREA	LARGEST MINING LEASE AREA
01	Andaman & Nicobar	NOT APPLICABLE		
02	Arunachal Pradesh	ONLY MINING PERMITS		
03	Himachal Pradesh	1.20	0.25	4.09
04	Jharkhand	0.25	0.13	87.38
05	Karnataka	5	5	19.42
06	Madhya Pradesh	8.52	0.30	306.98
07	Meghalaya	Mostly < 1.5 ha.		
08	Mizoram	NA		
09	Puducherry	NA		
10	Rajasthan	2 5 in Bikaner	24.82 2 in Bikaner	1901.89 5 in Bikaner
11	Tamil Nadu	29 leases < 10 ha.	14 leases of 10 - 15 ha.	42 leases > 15 ha.
12	Uttar Pradesh	25	5	200

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.

**APPENDIX: TABLE - 4**
**AVERAGE PERIOD OF SAND MINING
LEASES IN STATE / UT**

(In Hectare)

Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	AVERAGE MINING LEASE PERIOD (YEARS)
01	Andaman & Nicobar	Not Applicable
02	Arunachal Pradesh	Only mining permit is given
03	Himachal Pradesh	5
04	Jharkhand	3
05	Karnataka	2
06	Madhya Pradesh	5 to 10
07	Meghalaya	No lease in operation currently
08	Mizoram	No mining lease in operation currently
09	Puducherry	One year permit
10	Rajasthan	5 20-30 years in Bikaner
11	Tamil Nadu	3
12	Uttar Pradesh	3

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



APPENDIX: TABLE - 5

COMMON METHOD AND PRACTICE OF SAND MINING IN STATE / UT

Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	COMMON METHOD AND PRACTICE OF SAND MINING
01	Andaman & Nicobar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Apex Court in its order dated 7.5.2002 in I.A. No. 502 in WP (C) No. 202 of 1995, had directed that extraction of sand be phased out @ minimum 20% per year on reducing balance basis to bring the sand mining to a level of 33% of the present level of mining within a maximum period of five years. 2. Since the level of extraction of sand in the territory in the year 2001-02 i.e. the base year, was 68909 cubic meter, the quantity of extractable sand is fixed at 22581 cubic meter. 3. The quantity of sea sand so allowed by MoEF is extracted from the identified and approved sites having such deposits on the sea beaches (identified accreting area) with adequate environmental safeguards so as to prevent any damage to the sensitive coastal eco-system including corals, turtle/ bird nesting sites and the protected areas. 4. The allotment of sea sand is made to the individuals by the Sand Allotment Committee constituted by the Lieutenant Governor under the Chairmanship of Chief Secretary who also heads the A&N CZMA. The quantum of sea sand allotted is fixed by the Committee on the basis of availability of sea sand and the number of applicants (local) applied for their bonafide use.
02	Arunachal Pradesh	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Mining of sand restricted to foothills only that too for a very short period. Grant of mining lease is kept in abeyance, short term mining permits are issued to various Central and State agencies for carrying out developmental works under the strict supervision of the departmental officers.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	COMMON METHOD AND PRACTICE OF SAND MINING
03	Himachal Pradesh	Manual. The mining lease areas are sanctioned on the river bed if the area is approved in survey document. The mining activities are allowed strictly in accordance with the approved working cum Environment Management Plan and after the environment clearance.
04	Jharkhand	Manual
05	Karnataka	Manual
06	Madhya Pradesh	Manual
07	Meghalaya	Hill quarrying in private areas
08	Mizoram	Extraction of sand limited mainly for domestic purpose in the state. The produce extracted illegally is seized as per the Mizoram Forest Act, 1955. Mining is only limited to river banks and riverbeds with improvised equipments like spade, shovel, small canoes, etc.
09	Puducherry	Manual
10	Rajasthan	In Rajasthan sand is available in seasonal streams and rivers except Chambal which is perennial but mining is banned because of Chambal Crocodile Sanctuary. Mining is done up to 3 meters and is open cast. It is filled in trucks either manually or semi mechanized method. In Bikaner no river exists and mining for sand is being done from palaeo-channel. In this palaeo-channel the sand deposit occurs at the depth of 5 meter to 20 meter below ground level with an over burden of 5 to 20 meters. The mining here is done open cast benching method, where overlying blown sand, gravel, pebble etc. is removed, the sand is further sieved, graded and washed upto 12 to 18 mesh size.
11	Tamil Nadu	Manual mining is carried out in certain quarries. In most of the sand quarries two poclains are used by the PWD.
12	Uttar Pradesh	Manual and Semi-mechanised

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



APPENDIX: TABLE - 6

SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FROM STATES / UTs FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING

Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING
01	Andaman & Nicobar	The quantum of extractable sand fixed at 22581 cubic meter should be enhanced. This limit has been fixed by the orders of Hon'ble Supreme Court subject to study by National Institute of Oceanography.
02	Arunachal Pradesh	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For environmentally sustainable sand mining a strict and comprehensive sand mining policy need to be framed. 2. River sand is becoming a scarce commodity and hence exploring alternative to it has become imminent. Manufactured sand is a good alternative both for fine as well as coarse sand used in concrete. 3. Sand mining should be restricted to surface collection only without the use of heavy machinery. 4. Due to turbulent and inaccessible nature of rivers flowing in the hilly terrains of the state, deposition of the sand in the river bed is very negligible and except for few quarries in the foothills and plains, most of the notified quarries are boulders and mining of sand is very negligible. 5. In view of environment related issues the grant of mining lease for river bed minor mineral viz. sand, gravel, shingle, aggregate, boulder are kept in abeyance and extraction of these minerals is regulated only by grant of mining permits, that too not exceeding 3000 cubic meter in one permit. 6. For scientific mining of sand and other minor minerals Guideliness has been prepared and accordingly Geo-Technical Committee has been constituted under the chairmanship of ADC/SDO in the district level to determine the quantity of quarriable mineral that can be safely removed and also to give technical clearance for notification of quarries of smaller size, preferably within one hectare.
03	Chhattisgarh	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. While attempting to prepare a model Guidelines / policy for the country, the differences that exist in different states may be taken into account. It may be tried to take all stakeholders along.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING
		<p>2. To ease the process of EC granting, SEIAA may have benches across the State with each bench having a SEAC under it. Time bound clearance with ease of access and grant.</p> <p>3. Sand mining with use of machinery should be allowed.</p> <p>4. Road construction material like murram should be exempted from EC considering their local / pocket occurrences and impossibility of obtaining EC.</p> <p>5. Considering the traffic issue at urban areas and to reduce intermediaries like storage point dealers, night mining with adequate lighting should be allowed.</p> <p>6. To make the availability of sand from local rivulet / streams the river bank to in-stream mine area distance should be reduced from 10 meter to 3 meters.</p>
04	NCT of Delhi	<p>1. Location of sand mining should be identified by a committee comprising of revenue deptt., Irrigation Deptt., CGWB, SPCB, Forest Department and mining department. Mining area should distinctly be marked at site, before allowing mining.</p> <p>2. Depth of mining should be restricted to 3 mtrs or water level, whichever is less and that to from aggradation areas. The side slope of excavation should be less than 3:1.</p> <p>3. Requirement of sand and gravel should be reduced by utilization of construction and demolition waste. It requires not only legislative support but also awareness campaign among the society.</p> <p>4. Guidelines should be distinctly clear and easy to understand covering do's and don't during mining operation.</p> <p>5. Sufficient safe distance should be left between mining site and adjoining engineering structures like embankment, spurs, bed bars, bridges, reservoir and regulator etc.</p> <p>6. Security amount should be sufficient enough to compel the agency to carry out rehabilitation, corrective measures and to ensure strict compliance of conditions of lease. S.D. should be released after inspection of committee and recording of certificate that agency complied with the lease conditions.</p> <p>7. Mining may be carried out by state agency instead of private agencies.</p>

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING
05	Himachal Pradesh	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Working cum Environment Management Plan has been made mandatory. The mining activities are allowed after submission of environment clearance. 2. In compliance of order of Hon'ble Supreme Court dated 27.02.2012 in Deepak Kumar case, the Himachal Pradesh has repealed its rules called the Himachal Pradesh Minor Mineral (Concession) and Mineral (Prevention of illegal mining, transportation and Storage) Rule, 2015 in accordance to the recommendation of the Ministry of Environment & Forest and rules circulated by the Ministry of Mines. Hence the State of Himachal Pradesh has complied with the above directions of the Hon'ble Apex Court, 3. Therefore the condition of applicability of Environment Clearance on the area less than 5 hectare shall be exempted. 4. Further keeping in view, the peculiar topography, geography and socio-economic fabric of the State, the condition for the minimum size of the lease should be exempted as the rivers are in youth stage forming different land forms, land holdings are less, population is thin and scattered and the demand of minor mineral is limited, which could be met out locally by exploiting local resources on the small scale.
06	Jammu & Kashmir	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Uniform Guidelines be framed for sand mining and river bed mining as they cannot be segregated. 2. Identification of sand belts be made in consultation with CGWB and while framing Guideliness CGWB may be taken on board. 3. Sand mining leases less than 5 hectare be exempted from EC and comprehensive policy may be made for hilly states for easing the process of grant of lease.
07	Jharkhand	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Machine should not be used in sand mining. Only manual mining should be done. 2. The depth of mining shall be restricted to 3 meter / water level whichever is less. 3. No mining should be carried out in proximity of any bridge / embankment. 4. In-stream mining should not be allowed. 5. Mining should be done in accordance with an approved mining plan.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING
		6. EC should be valid for settlement period subject to ceiling of five years.
08	Karnataka	<p>1. Undertaking sand mining activity through a Government agency to be governed by District Level Sand Monitoring Committee headed by Deputy Commissioner.</p> <p>2. The area should be properly surveyed and mapped with the help of GPS to assign geo coordinates and accordingly erect boundary pillars so as to avoid illegal and unscientific mining.</p> <p>3. Depth of sand available may be indicated in a contour map using suitable drilled holes to ensure sand mining do not exceed one meter depth.</p> <p>4. Once thickness is established sand mining may be permitted to one meter depth where the thickness of sand is more than three meter deep. If the thickness of sand is less than three meter, sand mining shall not be permitted.</p> <p>5. Sufficient spacing shall be ensured from one block to another block and sufficient time gap shall be provided for replenishment before undertaking mining activity in the same block.</p> <p>6. Mining activity shall be restricted to only non-monsoon season and in the area that is exposed.</p> <p>7. No in-stream mining shall be permitted.</p> <p>8. No stream should be diverted for the purpose of sand mining. No natural water course and/ or water resources are obstructed due to mining operations.</p> <p>9. Site specific plan with eco-restoration should be in place.</p> <p>10. Sand mining shall be undertaken only by manual method without use of earth moving equipment such as JCB etc. Use of mechanized boats for sucking sand from in-stream area shall be strictly prohibited.</p> <p>11. Appropriate safety zones shall be maintained in proximity to any bridge / and / or embankment and other permanent structures. No sand mining shall be undertaken in such safety / buffer zones. Guideliness issued by the Ministry of Mines in this regard shall also be adhered to.</p> <p>12. The quarrying activity shall not intersect subterranean water level and ground water table.</p>

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING
		13.The top soil in case of surface land mining shall be stored temporarily in an earmarked site and concurrently used for land reclamation.
		14.Use of alternate material such as M-sand in place of natural river sand shall be encouraged in order to reduce stress on natural eco-system.
09	Madhya Pradesh	1. Geographical location of the state should be taken care of.
		2. Keep provision for extraction of sand from forest areas.
		3. Expedite the EC process.
		4. In inter-state boundary leases sand mining EC be giver by the SEIAA.
		5. Clear Guidelines for B-1, B2 be issued.
		6. Simplify cluster cases.
		7. Exempt mining leases of less than 5 hectare from EC.
10	Meghalaya	1. No sand mining within 3 kilometer from Protected area and Reserved Forest area.
		2. Advance royalty etc for entire quantity of mineral be realized in full.
		3. Only loose boulder and sand are allowed to be removed from the mid river stream leaving 15 meter on either side untouched.
		4. No collection of sand is allowed on 15 meter of either side of structures like bridge, culvert etc.
		5. No blasting allowed.
		6. No extraction of stone / boulder / sand in landslide prone areas.
		7. No stacking allowed on road side along national highways.
		8. No felling of tree near quarry is allowed.
		9. No transportation of forest produce (sand from forest area) is allowed after sunset.
		10.Export fee realized if sand is sent outside the state.
		11.Stone crusher cannot be installed without permission of DFO.
		12.Tree should be planted at quarry after completion of mining.
		13.Violation of above conditions will result in cancellation of permit and forfeiture of advance royalty already paid.
11	Mizoram	1. Extraction of sand from the forest may be permitted strictly as per mining plan approved by the Competent Authority and after getting necessary clearance under various acts related to the forest and environment.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING
12	Odisha	1. EC may be exempted for leases less than 5 hectare.
		2. EC should not be required for earth mining.
		3. Minor minerals even close to inter-state borders should be allowed to be cleared by the SEIAA.
		4. In case a river is forming boundary of states and mechanized mining of sand is causing tension in states it should be resolved at the national level.
13	Puducherry	1. Environment Clearance is issued by SEIAA, Puducherry strictly under the provisions of the EIA Notification, 2006 and subsequent amendments.
14	Rajasthan	1. The bajari mined out from river bed is filled back by the river itself during the next rainy season. So, nature itself reclaims the mined out area every year. The formation of bajari is a natural process in the river and it is also essential to remove bajari from the river bed to avoid silting. If the sand deposited in the river bed is not removed, it may cause change of river course and may also results in flood plains will be developed.
		2. Price control system adopted in Rajasthan. Sand is a essential commodity.
		3. The depth of mining should be restricted to 3 meters or above water table.
		4. Machinery having boom height more than 3 meter shall not be allowed in extraction of bajari.
		5. Size of mining leases be allowed below 5 hectare.
		6. In streams with low deposit of sand and if use is mostly local no mechanized mining should be allowed and EC should not be required.
		7. In larger deposits there should be semi-mechanised mining with EC.
		8. The sand (river and stream) in different categories, with their availability, use and size of the deposit. Category A: Small deposits in river and stream where thickness of sand bed is very less and sand is used locally in villages and towns only and no mechanical mining is done, in such areas restriction of obtaining Environment Clearance can be relaxed for manual mining.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING
		<p>Category B: Large deposits, where in rivers and streams having thickness of sand bed is medium to large, sand mining, shall be allowed with semi mechanized manner after obtaining Environment Clearance.</p> <p>Bikaner District: Bikaner district is a desert terrain where ground water table is very deep. Bajari is excavated above water table and it does not affect the water table. In addition to this boulder, gravel and waste generated due to bajari mining is used in reclamation of pits. Hence environment is not adversely affected due to bajari mining.</p>
15	Sikkim	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Forest department is the nodal department for sand and stone extraction from the riverbed. 2. Use of machines is prohibited. 3. Quarrying sites are allotted to village youth cooperatives. 4. For bigger companies quarry sites in forest area are allotted after FC. 5. State Government has considerations for allotment of quarries for Border Road Organization and MoD. 6. GoI can monitor mining in states through GIS.
16	Tamil Nadu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Excess sand deposits identified in the flood plains and in-stream areas only to be mined in order to safeguard and maintain ground water table. 2. Sand mining operation has to be carried out between 6 am to 7 pm. 3. Mining operation should be carried out in a systematic manner without affecting environment and ecology of the area.
17	Uttar Pradesh	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Depth of mining cannot be more than 3 meter or water table whichever is less. 2. Mining can be done in slices forming benches where bench height cannot be more than 1 meter and bench width cannot be less than 10 meter. 3. A width of not less than 50 meter or 10% width of river can be restricted for mining activities from river bank. A condition can be imposed that mining will be done from river activities from river bank. 4. SEIAA should be decentralized to expedite EC process. It can be decentralized to district or zonal level.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	SUGGESTIONS / RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING
		<p>5. Make EC conditions practical.</p> <p>6. Requirement of mining plan in river bed mining be done away with.</p> <p>7. There should not be requirement of EC for short term permit.</p> <p>8. The quantity of sand should not be fixed in EC as it leads to loss in revenue and illegal mining.</p> <p>9. Semi-mechanised form of sand mining be allowed.</p> <p>10. Sand mining to be exempted from EC as it takes 6-8 months and environment department do not have requisite work force to enforce EC conditions. A Guidelines for environmentally sustainable sand mining be framed and it can be complied by imposing it in the lease condition.</p>
18	Uttarakhand	<p>1. Area less than 5 hectare be exempted from EC.</p> <p>2. Use of machine be allowed for scientific mining and reducing the cost of production.</p> <p>3. RBM deposition in the lease should not be fixed for the entire lease period. RBM in lease area be assessed after rains every year.</p> <p>4. 70% of leases in state not operating for want of EC and these vacant lots are source of illegal mining.</p>

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.

**APPENDIX: TABLE - 7****BEST PRACTICE OF SAND MINING ADOPTED IN DISTRICT / STATE / UT**

Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	DESCRIPTION OF BEST PRACTICES
01	Andaman & Nicobar	Institute of Ocean Management has been entrusted the task of identification of sand accreting sites.
02	Arunachal Pradesh	Mining of sand is restricted to foothills only that too for a very short period.
03	National Capital Territory of Delhi	In Delhi sand mining lease is granted by Revenue department. NOC from I&FC Deptt. Were issued with condition of limitation of depth, area of mining, operation timing limitation and limited period of NOC. Compliance of laid down conditions and monitoring is ensured by collector.
04	Himachal Pradesh	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The mining activities on river beds are allowed strictly as per the provisions of river / stream bed mining policy as under. 2. No river / stream bed mining shall be allowed without the recommendation of the Sub Divisional Level Committee constituted under the Chairmanship of Sub Divisional Magistrate having XEN PWD, Irrigation and Public Health, SPCB, DFO and Mining Officer as its member. 3. Nor river / stream bed mining shall be allowed within 75 meter from the periphery of soil conservation works, nursery plantations, check dams or within the distance as recommended by the Sub-Divisional Committee whichever is more. 4. No river / stream bed mining shall be allowed within 1/10th of its span or 5 meters from the banks or as specified by the Sub-Divisional Level Committee, whichever is more. 5. Nor river / stream bed mining shall be allowed within 200 meters upstream and downstream of water supply scheme or as specified by the Committee whichever is more. 6. Nor river / stream bed mining shall be allowed within 200 meters upstream and 200 to 500 meters downstream of bridges depending upon the site specific conditions.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	DESCRIPTION OF BEST PRACTICES
		<p>7. No approach road from PWD road shall be allowed to lease area unless lessee / contractor obtains written permission from XEN, PWD for making road leading to all intake places from the PWD road.</p> <p>8. No boulders/ cobbles/ hand broken road ballast shall be allowed to be transported outside the State from river/stream beds.</p> <p>9. No digging for more than 3 feet shall be allowed in river/ stream beds.</p> <p>10.No blasting shall be allowed in river/stream beds.</p>
05	Madhya Pradesh	1. In some districts the Cooperative Societies of Labour are doing the sand collection, loading and unloading work.
06	Tamil Nadu	Permission has been granted in favour of PWD for quarrying sand in the river Poramboke lands in 16 districts in the state of Tamil Nadu. Sand mining is being carried out by the PWD in the entire State.
07	Uttar Pradesh	U.P. Minor Mineral Concession Rules, 1963.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



APPENDIX: TABLE - 8

STATUS OF PROMULGATION OF RULE ON SAND MINING IN THE STATE / UT

Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	NAME OF RULE WITH YEAR OF PROMULGATION
01	Andaman & Nicobar	Indian Forest Act, 1927 as sand has been included as forest produce.
02	Arunachal Pradesh	APMMCR 2002 and made effective from 1.01.2003
03	Himachal Pradesh	1. River/Stream bed Mining Policy-2004. 2. Himachal Pradesh Minor Mineral Policy-2013. 3. Himachal Pradesh Minor Mineral (Concession) and Mineral (Prevention of illegal mining, transportation and storage) Rule, 2015.
04	Jharkhand	Rule 12 of Jharkhand Minor Mineral Concession (Amendment) Rule 2014.
05	Karnataka	Karnataka Sand Policy was brought out in the year 2011 and as such amendment to the Karnataka Minor Mineral Concession Rule 1994 were made in the year 2011 and a separate chapter IV B for sand mining was introduced under Rule 31-R. Further, as per the Hon'ble Supreme Court orders sated 27.02.2012 in SLP No. 19628-19629 between Deepak Kumar and State of Haryana and others and as per the model Guideliness issued by the Government of India for Environmental Management of Mining of Minor Minerals, amendment to the Karnataka Minor Mineral Concessions Rule 1994 were brought out on 16.12.2013 incorporating a new chapter II A applicable to all minor minerals on Systematic, Scientific Mining and Protection of Environment, wherein Quarrying Plan, Environmental Management Plan and Environment Clearance was made mandatory. Amendments to Rule 31- R were also made wherein the Government, PWD Department was entrusted with sand mining, storage and transportation, under the District Sand Monitoring Committee and Taluk Sand Monitoring Committee.
06	Madhya Pradesh	Rules have been framed as per the orders of Hon'ble Supreme Court for sand mining under M.P. Minor Mineral Rules 1996 and Sand Mining Policy 2015 is also formulated in the State.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



Sl.No.	STATE / U.T	NAME OF RULE WITH YEAR OF PROMULGATION
07	Meghalaya	No rules notified by the state on sand mining
08	Mizoram	Mizoram Forest Act, 1955, which came into force on 1.01.1956.
09	Puducherry	Puducherry Minor Minerals (Concession) Rules, 1977.
10	Rajasthan	RMMCR, 1986 Notification dated 2.11.2012: 1. First proviso of Rule 8(2) and first proviso of 17 (1) - Renewal of Bajari Mining Leases is not allowed. 2. Rule 16 (3) - Mining Leases of Bajari to be granted for 5 years. 3. Rule 18 (18) - Part surrender of lease area of Bajari not allowed. Notification dated 3.4.2013 - (First proviso Rule 7 (1)- Mining leases of Bajari to be granted only by way of tender or auction. Notification dated 12.07.2013 - (First proviso Rule 11 (2)) - Maximum area limit of 10 sq. km. not applicable for Bajari Mining Leases. Bikaner District: Chapter II of RMMCR, 1986 (last amended 12.07.2013).
11	Sikkim	Sikkim Forest (Allotment of Areas for Quarrying of Sand and Stone), 2006.
12	Tamil Nadu	1. As per G.O. Ms. No. 95 Industries (MMCI) Department dated 1.10.2003, a new Rule 38 A has been introduced in the Tamil Nadu Minor Mineral Concession Rules, 1959. Accordingly quarrying and sale of sand is being carried out by PWD in the state of Tamil Nadu since October 2003. 2. As per G.O. Ms. No. 158 Industries (MMIC) Department dated 25.08.2008, a new Rule 38 B has been introduced in the Tamil Nadu Minor Mineral Concession Rules, 1959. Accordingly transportation of sand outside the state not to be made. To regulate storage and transportation of sand a new Rule 38 C B has been introduced in the Tamil Nadu Minor Mineral Concession Rules, 1959 vide G.O. No. 32 Industries (MMIC) Department dated 11.02.2011.

* States/UTs not mentioned have not provided the data.



APPENDIX: TABLE -9

NORMAL DATES OF ONSET AND WITHDRAWAL OF SOUTH-WEST MONSOON

The India Meteorological Department, Nagpur, vide letter No. NAGPUR RMC /CS-312, dated 18th January, 2016 has provided the period of Rainy Season viz. Normal dates of Onset and Withdrawal of Southwest Monsoon over India as state-wise and union territory- wise which are as below:-

States	Normal date of Onset of SW-Monsoon	Normal date of Withdrawal of SW-Monsoon
Andhra Pradesh	1st June	15th October
Arunachal Pradesh	5th June	15th October
Assam	5th June	15th October
Bihar	10th June	15th October
Chhattisgarh	10th June	15th October
Goa	5th June	15th October
Gujarat	15th June	15th September
Haryana	1st July	15th September
Himachal Pradesh	1st July	15th September
Jammu & Kashmir	1st July	15th September
Jharkhand	10th June	15th October
Karnataka	5th June	15th October
Kerala	1st June	15th October
Madhya Pradesh	15th June	1st October
Maharashtra	10th June	1st October
Manipur	1st June	15th October
Meghalaya	1st June	15th October
Mizoram	1st June	15th October
Nagaland	5th June	15th October
Odisha (Orissa)	5th June	15th October
Punjab	1st July	15th September
Rajasthan	1st July	1st September
Sikkim	5th June	15th October
Tamil Nadu	1st June	15th October
Telangana	5th June	15th October
Tripura	1st June	15th October



States	Normal date of Onset of SW-Monsoon	Normal date of Withdrawal of SW-Monsoon
Uttar Pradesh	15th June	1st October
Uttarakhand	15th June	1st October
West Bengal	10th June	15th October
Union territory	Normal date of Onset of SW-Monsoon	Normal date of Withdrawal of SW-Monsoon
Andaman and Nicobar Islands	20th May	15th October
Dadra and Nagar Haveli	10th June	1st October
Daman and Diu	10th June	1st October
Lakshadweep	1st June	15th October
Delhi	1st July	15th September
Puducherry	1st June	15th October

Note: The District Environment Impact Assessment Authority (DEIAA) in consultation with District Expert Appraisal Committee (DEAC) can make necessary changes as per local meteorological variations in this period of rainy season with respect to prohibition of River Sand Mining in the District.

ENSURING SUSTAINABLE SAND MINING FOR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

A Major Initiative of Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change for ensuring Environmentally Sustainable Sand Mining and Prevention of illegal Sand Mining.

{Notification No: SO No. 141 (E) dated 15.01.2016 and S.O. No. 190 (E) dated 20.01.2016 available at www.envfor.nic.in}

- ◆ Use of Satellite imagery to decide the site suitable for mining and quantity of sand which can be mined.
- ◆ Transit permit with tamper proof security features and tracking of mined out mineral.
- ◆ Monitoring of mined out mineral to prevent mining in excess of environmental clearance capacity.

- ▶ Delegation of power to grant environmental clearance for sand mining to an authority headed by District Magistrate.

- ▶ Intergration of power with District Authorities to grant environmental clearance and prevent illegal mining.



Note : Any information of mining without environmental clearance or against the norms prescribed in these notifications be reported at e-mail id: sandmining-moef@gov.in



भारत का राजपत्र The Gazette of India

सी.जी.-डी.एल.-अ.-28032020-218948
CG-DL-E-28032020-218948

असाधारण
EXTRAORDINARY
भाग II—खण्ड 3—उप-खण्ड (ii)
PART II—Section 3—Sub-section (ii)
प्राधिकार से प्रकाशित
PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY

सं. 1088]

नई दिल्ली, शनिवार, मार्च 28, 2020/चैत्र 8, 1942

No. 1088]

NEW DELHI, SATURDAY, MARCH 28, 2020/CHAITRA 8, 1942

पर्यावरण, वन और जलवायु परिवर्तन मंत्रालय

अधिसूचना

नई दिल्ली, 28 मार्च, 2020

का.आ. 1224(अ).—खनिज विधि (संशोधन) अधिनियम 2020 (2020 का 2), खान और खनिज (विकास और विनियमन) अधिनियम, 1957 (1957 का 67) (जिसे इसमें इसके पश्चात् एमएमडीआर अधिनियम कहा गया है) द्वारा 10 जनवरी, 2020 से प्रभावी संशोधन किया गया है और अन्य बातों के साथ कानूनी निर्वाधन के अंतरण के लिए उपबंधों से संबंधित नई धारा 8ख का अंतःस्थापन किया गया है;

और, एमएमडीआर अधिनियम की धारा 8ख की उप-धारा (2) यह उपबंध करता है कि इस अधिनियम में या तत्समय प्रवृत्त किसी अन्य विधि में अंतर्विष्ट किसी बात के होते हुए भी, धारा 8क की उप-धारा (5) और उप-धारा (6) के उपबंधों के अधीन अवसान होने वाले खनन पट्टे का सफल बोली लगाने वाला और उस अधिनियम के अधीन या तद्विधित बनाए गए नियमों के अधीन उपबंधित प्रक्रिया के अनुसार नीलामी के माध्यम से अर्जित सभी विधिमान्य अधिकार, अनुमोदन, निकासी, अनुज्ञप्ति और इसी प्रकार दो वर्ष की अवधि के लिए पूर्ववर्ती पट्टेदार पर निहित होना समझा जाएगा;

और, एमएमडीआर अधिनियम की धारा 8ख की उप-धारा (3) यह उपबंध करता है कि तत्समय प्रवृत्त अन्य विधि में अंतर्विष्ट किसी बात के होते हुए भी, यह उस भूमि पर जिसमें नया पट्टा के प्रारंभ से दो वर्ष की अवधि के लिए पूर्ववर्ती पट्टेदार द्वारा खनन संक्रियाएं कार्यान्वित किए जा रहे थे, निरंतर खनन संक्रियाओं को नए पट्टेदार के लिए विधिपूर्ण किया जाएगा;

और, एमएमडीआर अधिनियम को पूर्वोक्त संशोधन के प्रयोजन के लिए केंद्रीय सरकार, भारत सरकार के तत्कालीन पर्यावरण और वन मंत्रालय की अधिसूचना सं. का. आ. 1533 (अ), तारीख 14 सितंबर, 2006 (जिसे इसमें इसके पश्चात् ईआईए अधिसूचना, 2006 कहा गया है) के सुसंगत उपबंधों को सम्मिलित करने के लिए आवश्यक समझती है।

और, पर्यावरण, वन और जलवायु परिवर्तन मंत्रालय में सड़कों के लिए साधारण पृथ्वी का उपयोग करने के लिए पूर्व पर्यावरणीय अनापत्ति की अपेक्षा के अधित्याग के लिए अभ्यावेदनों की प्राप्ति पर; और पारंपरिक समुदाय द्वारा अंतर ज्वारीय क्षेत्र के भीतर चूने के गोले (मृत भू-पटल), पवित्र स्थानों, आदि के मैनुअल निकासी;

अतः, अब, केन्द्रीय सरकार, पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) नियम, 1986 के नियम 5 के उप-नियम (4) के साथ पठित पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) अधिनियम, 1986 (1986 का 29) की धारा 3 की उप-धारा (1) और उप-धारा (2) के खंड (v) द्वारा प्रदत्त शक्तियों का प्रयोग करते हुए, लोकहित में, उक्त नियमों के नियम 5 के उप-नियम (3) के खंड (क) के अधीन सूचना की अपेक्षा से अभिमुक्ति के पश्चात् और अधिसूचना सं. का. आ. 4307 (अ), तारीख 29 नवंबर, 2019 को अधिकांत करते हुए, ईआईए अधिसूचना, 2006 में निम्नलिखित संशोधन करती है, अर्थात् :-

उक्त अधिसूचना में, -

(i) पैरा 11 में, उप-पैरा (2) के पश्चात् निम्नलिखित उप-पैरा अंतःस्थापित किया जाएगा, अर्थात् :-

“(3) खान और खनिज (विकास और विनियमन) अधिनियम, 1957 (1957 का 67) की धारा 8क की उप-धारा (5) और उप-धारा (6) के उपबंधों के अधीन अवसान होने वाले खनन पट्टे का सफल बोली लगाने वाला और उस अधिनियम के अधीन और तद्विना बनाए गए नियमों के अधीन उपबंधित प्रक्रिया के अनुसार नीलामी के माध्यम से चयनित नया पट्टा के प्रारंभ की तारीख से दो वर्ष की अवधि के लिए पूर्ववर्ती पट्टेदार पर निहित पूर्व पर्यावरणीय अनापत्ति विधिमान्य अर्जित किया गया समझा जाएगा और यह नया पट्टा प्रारंभ की तारीख से दो वर्ष की अवधि के लिए या उसमें उल्लिखित निबंधनों शर्तों के अनुसार नया पर्यावरणीय अनापत्ति, नया निकासी अभिप्राप्त होने तक, इसमें से जो भी पूर्वतर हो, उक्त पट्टा क्षेत्र पर पूर्ववर्ती पट्टेदार का स्वीकृत पर्यावरणीय अनापत्ति के निबंधनों और शर्तों के अनुसार निरंतर खनन संक्रिया नया पट्टेदार के लिए विधिपूर्ण होंगी;

परन्तु, सफल बोली लगाने वाला नया पट्टा मंजूर करने की तारीख से दो वर्ष की अवधि के भीतर विनियामक प्राधिकरण से पूर्व पर्यावरणीय अनापत्ति के लिए आवेदन करेगा और अभिप्राप्त करेगा।”;

(ii) अनुसूची के मद 1 (क) के सामने, स्तंभ (5) के खंड (2) के टिप्पण के पश्चात् निम्नलिखित खंड अंतःस्थापित किया जाएगा, अर्थात् :-

“(3) उक्त पट्टा के अवसान के पश्चात् पूर्ववर्ती पट्टेदार द्वारा खनन और खनिज (विकास और विनियमन) अधिनियम, 1957 (1957 का 67) के उपबंधों के अधीन खनन पट्टे के अवसान होने तक भीतर पड़ी पहले से ही खनिज वाह्य सामग्री का निष्क्रमण या निष्कासन और परिवहन उस अधिनियम के अधीन और तद्विना बनाए गए नियमों के अधीन उपबंधित प्रक्रिया के अनुसार नीलामी के माध्यम से चयनित सफल बोली लगाने की इस प्रकार अनुज्ञात खनन हैसियत के भाग के रूप में नहीं होगा।”

(iii) परिशिष्ट – IX के लिए, निम्नलिखित परिशिष्ट प्रतिस्थापित किया जाएगा, अर्थात् :-

“परिशिष्ट – 9

कतिपय मामलों के पर्यावरणीय अनापत्ति की अपेक्षा से छूट

निम्नलिखित मामलों को पूर्व पर्यावरणीय अनापत्ति की अपेक्षा नहीं होगी, अर्थात् :-

1. मैनुअल खनन द्वारा साधारण मिट्टी या बालू की कुम्हारों द्वारा मिट्टी के घड़े, लैम्प, खिलौने, आदि बनाने के लिए उनकी प्रथाओं के अनुसार निकासी।
2. मैनुअल खनन द्वारा मिट्टी की टाइलें बनाने द्वारा जो मिट्टी की टाइलें बनाते हैं, के लिए साधारण मिट्टी या बालू की निकासी।
3. किसानों द्वारा बाढ़ के पश्चात् कृषि भूमि से बालू के जमाव को हटाना।

4. ग्राम पंचायत में अवस्थित स्रोतों से बालू और साधारण मिट्टी को वैयक्तिक उपयोग या ग्राम में समुदाय कार्य के लिए प्रथा के अनुसार खनन।
5. सामुदायिक कार्य जैसे ग्रामीण तालाबों या टैंकों से गाद हटाना, महात्मा गांधी राष्ट्रीय ग्रामीण रोजगार और गारंटी स्कीमों, अन्य सरकारी स्कीमों, प्रायोजित तथा सामुदायिक प्रयासों द्वारा ग्रामीण सड़कों, तालाबों या बांधों का संनिर्माण।
6. सड़क, पाइपलाइन, आदि जैसे रेखीय परियोजनाओं के लिए साधारण मिट्टी की निकासी, निष्कासन या प्रयोग करना।
7. बांधों, तालाबों, मेड़ों, बैराजों, नदी और नहरों की उनके अनुरक्षित तथा आपदा प्रबंधन के प्रयोजन के लिए तलमार्जन और गाद निकालना।
8. गुजरात में गुजरात सरकार की तारीख 14 फरवरी, 1990 की अधिसूचना सं. जीयू / 90 (16)/ एमसीआर-2189 (68) / 5 – सीएचएच द्वारा बंजारा और ओड द्वारा बालू के पारंपरिक उपजीविका कार्य।
9. पारंपरिक समुदाय द्वारा अंतर ज्वारीय क्षेत्र के भीतर चूने के गोलों (मृत भू-पटल), पवित्र स्थानों, आदि के मैनुअल निकासी।
10. सिंचाई या पेयजल के लिए कुओं की खुदाई।
11. यथास्थिति, ऐसे भवनों की नींव के लिए खुदाई जिनके लिए पूर्व पर्यावरणीय अनापत्ति अपेक्षित नहीं है।
12. जिला कलेक्टर या जिला मजिस्ट्रेट या किसी अन्य सक्षम प्राधिकारी के आदेश पर किसी नहर, नाला, ड्रेन, जल निकाय, आदि में होने वाली दरार को भरने के लिए साधारण मिट्टी या बालू का उत्खनन ताकि किसी आपदा या बाढ़ जैसी स्थिति से निपटा जा सके।
13. ऐसे क्रियाकलाप, जिन्हें राज्य सरकार द्वारा विधान या नियमों के अधीन गैर खननकारी क्रियाकलाप के रूप में घोषित किया गया है।”

[फा. सं. जेड-11013 / 47 / 2018-आई. ए. II (एम)]

गीता मेनन, संयुक्त सचिव

टिप्पण : मूल अधिसूचना भारत के राजपत्र, असाधारण, भाग II, खंड 3, उप-खंड (ii) में सं. का. आ. 1533 (अ), तारीख 14 सितंबर 2006 द्वारा प्रकाशित की गई थी और निम्नलिखित सं. द्वारा पश्चात्कर्ती संशोधन किया गया :-

1. का. आ. 1949 (अ), तारीख 13 नवंबर, 2006;
2. का. आ. 1737 (अ), तारीख 11 अक्टूबर, 2007;
3. का. आ. 3067 (अ), तारीख 1 दिसंबर, 2009;
4. का. आ. 695 (अ), तारीख 4 अप्रैल, 2011;
5. का. आ. 156 (अ), तारीख 25 जनवरी, 2012;
6. का. आ. 2896 (अ), तारीख 13 दिसंबर, 2012;
7. का. आ. 674 (अ), तारीख 13 मार्च, 2013;
8. का. आ. 2204 (अ), तारीख 19 जुलाई, 2013;
9. का. आ. 2555 (अ), तारीख 21 अगस्त, 2013;
10. का. आ. 2559 (अ), तारीख 22 अगस्त, 2013;
11. का. आ. 2731 (अ), तारीख 9 सितंबर, 2013;

12. का. आ. 562 (अ), तारीख 26 फरवरी, 2014;
13. का. आ. 637 (अ), तारीख 28 फरवरी, 2014;
14. का. आ. 1599 (अ), तारीख 25 जून, 2014;
15. का. आ. 2601 (अ), तारीख 7 अक्टूबर, 2014;
16. का. आ. 2600 (अ), तारीख 9 अक्टूबर, 2014;
17. का. आ. 3252 (अ), तारीख 22 दिसंबर, 2014;
18. का. आ. 382 (अ), तारीख 3 फरवरी, 2015;
19. का. आ. 811 (अ), तारीख 23 मार्च, 2015;
20. का. आ. 996 (अ), तारीख 10 अप्रैल, 2015;
21. का. आ. 1142 (अ), तारीख 17 अप्रैल, 2015;
22. का. आ. 1141 (अ), तारीख 29 अप्रैल, 2015;
23. का. आ. 1834 (अ), तारीख 6 जुलाई, 2015;
24. का. आ. 2571 (अ), तारीख 31 अगस्त, 2015;
25. का. आ. 2572 (अ), तारीख 14 सितंबर, 2015;
26. का. आ. 141 (अ), तारीख 15 जनवरी, 2016;
27. का. आ. 648 (अ), तारीख 3 मार्च, 2016;
28. का. आ. 2269 (अ), तारीख 1 जुलाई, 2016;
29. का. आ. 2944 (अ), तारीख 14 सितंबर, 2016;
30. का. आ. 3518 (अ), तारीख 23 नवंबर, 2016;
31. का. आ. 3999 (अ), तारीख 9 दिसंबर, 2016;
32. का. आ. 4241 (अ), तारीख 30 दिसंबर, 2016;
33. का. आ. 3611 (अ), तारीख 25 जुलाई, 2018;
34. का. आ. 3977 (अ), तारीख 14 अगस्त, 2018;
35. का. आ. 5733 (अ), तारीख 14 नवंबर, 2018;
36. का. आ. 5736 (अ), तारीख 15 नवंबर, 2018;
37. का. आ. 5845 (अ), तारीख 26 नवंबर, 2018;
38. का. आ. 345 (अ), तारीख 17 जनवरी, 2019;
39. का. आ. 1960 (अ), तारीख 13 जून, 2019;
40. का. आ. 236 (अ), तारीख 16 जनवरी, 2020;
41. का. आ. 751 (अ), तारीख 17 फरवरी, 2020; और
42. का. आ. 1223 (अ), तारीख 27 मार्च, 2020।

MINISTRY OF ENVIRONMENT, FOREST AND CLIMATE CHANGE**NOTIFICATION**

New Delhi, the 28th March, 2020

S.O. 1224(E).—WHEREAS, *vide* the Mineral Laws (Amendment) Act, 2020 (2 of 2020), the Mines and Minerals (Development and Regulation) Act, 1957 (67 of 1957) (hereinafter referred to as MMDR Act) has been amended with effect from the 10th day of January, 2020 and, *inter alia*, new section 8B relating to the provisions for transfer of statutory clearances has been inserted;

AND WHEREAS, sub-section (2) of section 8B of the MMDR Act provides that notwithstanding anything contained in this Act or any other law for the time being in force, the successful bidder of mining leases expiring under the provisions of sub-sections (5) and (6) of section 8A and selected through auction as per the procedure provided under this Act and the rules made thereunder, shall be deemed to have acquired all valid rights, approvals, clearances, licences and the like vested with the previous lessee for a period of two years;

AND WHEREAS, sub-section (3) of section 8B of the MMDR Act provides that notwithstanding anything contained in any other law for the time being in force, it shall be lawful for the new lessee to continue mining operations on the land, in which mining operations were being carried out by the previous lessee, for a period of two years from the date of commencement of the new lease;

AND WHEREAS, in pursuance of the aforesaid amendment to the MMDR Act, the Central Government deems it necessary to align the relevant provisions of the notification of the Government of India in the erstwhile Ministry of Environment and Forests number S.O. 1533 (E), dated the 14th September, 2006 (hereinafter referred to as the EIA Notification, 2006);

AND WHEREAS, the Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change is in the receipt of representations for waiver of requirement of prior environmental clearance for borrowing of ordinary earth for roads; and manual extraction of lime shells (dead shell), shrines, etc., within inter tidal zone by the traditional community;

Now, therefore, in exercise of the powers conferred by sub-section (1) and clause (v) of sub-section (2) of section 3 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 (29 of 1986), read with sub-rule (4) of rule 5 of the Environment (Protection) Rules, 1986, the Central Government, after having dispensed with the requirement of notice under clause (a) of sub-rule (3) of the rule 5 of the said rules, in public interest, and in supersession of the notification number S.O. 4307(E), dated the 29th November, 2019, hereby makes the following further amendments in the EIA Notification, 2006, namely:-

In the said notification,-

(i) in paragraph 11, after sub-paragraph (2), the following sub-paragraph shall be inserted, namely:-

“(3) The successful bidder of the mining leases, expiring under the provisions of sub-sections (5) and (6) of section 8A of the Mines and Minerals (Development and Regulation) Act, 1957 (67 of 1957) and selected through auction as per the procedure provided under that Act and the rules made thereunder, shall be deemed to have acquired valid prior environmental clearance vested with the previous lessee for a period of two years, from the date of commencement of new lease and it shall be lawful for the new lessee to continue mining operations as per the same terms and conditions of environmental clearance granted to the previous lessee on the said lease area for a period of two years from the date of commencement of new lease or till the new lessee obtains a fresh environmental clearance with the terms and conditions mentioned therein, whichever is earlier:

Provided that the successful bidder shall apply and obtain prior environmental clearance from the regulatory authority within a period of two years from the date of grant of new lease.”;

(ii) in the Schedule, against the item 1(a), in the column (5), after clause (2) of the Note, the following clause shall be inserted, namely:-

“(3) The evacuation or removal and transportation of already mined out material lying within the mining leases expiring under the provisions of the Mines and Minerals (Development and Regulation) Act, 1957 (67 of 1957), by the previous lessee, after the expiry of the said lease, shall not form the part of the mining capacity so permitted to the successful bidder, selected through auction as per the procedure provided under that Act and the rules made thereunder.”;

(iii) for Appendix-IX, the following Appendix shall be substituted, namely:-

“APPENDIX-IX

EXEMPTION OF CERTAIN CASES FROM REQUIREMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CLEARANCE

The following cases shall not require Prior Environmental Clearance, namely:-

1. Extraction of ordinary clay or sand by manual mining, by the Kumhars (Potter) to prepare earthen pots, lamp, toys, etc. as per their customs.
2. Extraction of ordinary clay or sand by manual mining, by earthen tile makers who prepare earthen tiles.
3. Removal of sand deposits on agricultural field after flood by farmers.
4. Customary extraction of sand and ordinary earth from sources situated in Gram Panchayat for personal use or community work in village.
5. Community works, like, de-silting of village ponds or tanks, construction of village roads, ponds or bunds undertaken in Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment and Guarantee Schemes, other Government sponsored schemes and community efforts.
6. Extraction or sourcing or borrowing of ordinary earth for the linear projects such as roads, pipelines, etc.
7. Dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management.
8. Traditional occupational work of sand by Vanjara and Oads in Gujarat vide notification number GU/90(16)/MCR-2189(68)/5-CHH, dated the 14th February, 1990 of the Government of Gujarat.
9. Manual extraction of lime shells (dead shell), shrines, etc., within inter tidal zone by the traditional community.
10. Digging of wells for irrigation or drinking water purpose.
11. Digging of foundation for buildings, not requiring prior environmental clearance, as the case may be.
12. Excavation of ordinary earth or clay for plugging of any breach caused in canal, nallah, drain, water body, etc., to deal with any disaster or flood like situation upon orders of the District Collector or District Magistrate or any other Competent Authority.
13. Activities declared by the State Government under legislations or rules as non-mining activity.”

[F. No. Z-11013/47/2018-IA.II (M)]

GEETA MENON, Jt. Secy.

Note: The principal notification was published in the Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section 3, Sub-section (ii) *vide* number S.O. 1533 (E), dated the 14th September, 2006 and subsequently amended *vide* the following numbers:-

1. S.O. 1949 (E), dated the 13th November, 2006;
2. S.O. 1737 (E), dated the 11th October, 2007;
3. S.O. 3067 (E), dated the 1st December, 2009;
4. S.O. 695 (E), dated the 4th April, 2011;
5. S.O. 156 (E), dated the 25th January, 2012;
6. S.O. 2896 (E), dated the 13th December, 2012;
7. S.O. 674 (E), dated the 13th March, 2013;
8. S.O. 2204 (E), dated the 19th July, 2013;
9. S.O. 2555 (E), dated the 21st August, 2013;
10. S.O. 2559 (E), dated the 22nd August, 2013;
11. S.O. 2731 (E), dated the 9th September, 2013;
12. S.O. 562 (E), dated the 26th February, 2014;
13. S.O. 637 (E), dated the 28th February, 2014;

14. S.O. 1599 (E), dated the 25th June, 2014;
15. S.O. 2601 (E), dated the 7th October, 2014;
16. S.O. 2600 (E), dated the 9th October, 2014;
17. S.O. 3252 (E), dated the 22nd December, 2014;
18. S.O. 382 (E), dated the 3rd February, 2015;
19. S.O. 811 (E), dated the 23rd March, 2015;
20. S.O. 996 (E), dated the 10th April, 2015;
21. S.O. 1142 (E), dated the 17th April, 2015;
22. S.O. 1141 (E), dated the 29th April, 2015;
23. S.O. 1834 (E), dated the 6th July, 2015;
24. S.O. 2571 (E), dated the 31st August, 2015;
25. S.O. 2572 (E), dated the 14th September, 2015;
26. S.O. 141 (E), dated the 15th January, 2016;
27. S.O. 648 (E), dated the 3rd March, 2016;
28. S.O. 2269(E), dated the 1st July, 2016;
29. S.O. 2944(E), dated the 14th September, 2016;
30. S.O. 3518 (E), dated 23rd November 2016;
31. S.O. 3999 (E), dated the 9th December, 2016;
32. S.O. 4241(E), dated the 30th December, 2016;
33. S.O. 3611(E), dated the 25th July, 2018;
34. S.O. 3977 (E), dated the 14th August, 2018;
35. S.O. 5733 (E), dated the 14th November, 2018;
36. S.O. 5736 (E), dated the 15th November, 2018;
37. S.O. 5845(E), dated the 26th November, 2018;
38. S.O. 345(E), dated the 17th January, 2019;
39. S.O. 1960(E), dated the 13th June, 2019;
40. S.O. 236(E), dated the 16th January, 2020;
41. S.O. 751(E), dated the 17th February, 2020; and
42. S.O. 1223(E), dated the 27th March, 2020.



भारत का राजपत्र The Gazette of India

सी.जी.-डी.एल.-अ.-31082023-248436
CG-DL-E-31082023-248436

असाधारण

EXTRAORDINARY

भाग II—खण्ड 3—उप-खण्ड (ii)

PART II—Section 3—Sub-section (ii)

प्राधिकार से प्रकाशित

PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY

सं. 3679]

नई दिल्ली, बृहस्पतिवार, अगस्त 31, 2023/भाद्र 9, 1945

No. 3679]

NEW DELHI, THURSDAY, AUGUST 31, 2023/BHADRA 9, 1945

पर्यावरण, वन और जलवायु परिवर्तन मंत्रालय

अधिसूचना

नई दिल्ली, 30 अगस्त, 2023

का.आ. 3840(अ).—केंद्रीय सरकार द्वारा पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) अधिनियम, 1986 की धारा (3) की उपधारा (1) और उपधारा (2) के खंड (v) के अधीन तत्कालीन पर्यावरण एवं वन मंत्रालय में परियोजनाओं के कतिपय प्रवर्गों के लिए पूर्व पर्यावरणीय मंजूरी को आज्ञापक बनाने के लिए संख्यांक 1533 (अ), तारीख 14 सितंबर, 2006 (जिसे इसमें इसके पश्चात ईआईए अधिसूचना कहा गया) द्वारा एक अधिसूचना जारी की गई;

और, केंद्रीय सरकार ने, अन्य बातों के साथ, कतिपय परियोजनाओं के संबंध में पूर्व पर्यावरण मंजूरी की अपेक्षित कतिपय क्रियाकलापों में छूट देने के लिए अधिसूचना संख्या 1224(अ), तारीख 28 मार्च, 2020, द्वारा ईआईए अधिसूचना में परिशिष्ट-IX में संशोधन किया;

और, राष्ट्रीय हरित अधिकरण, नई दिल्ली की प्रधान न्यायपीठ ने नोबल एम पाइकाडा बनाम भारत संघ और अन्य के मामले में 2020 के मूल आवेदन संख्या 190 में अपने तारीख 28 अक्टूबर, 2020 के आदेश द्वारा उक्त अधिसूचना पर पुनः विचार करने के निर्देश पारित किया;

अतः अब, केंद्रीय सरकार, पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) नियम, 1986 के नियम 5 के उप-नियम (4) के साथ पठित पर्यावरण (संरक्षण) अधिनियम, 1986, (1986 का 29) की धारा 3 की उप-धारा (1) और उप-धारा(2) के खंड (v), द्वारा प्रदत्त शक्तियों का प्रयोग करते हुए, उक्त नियम के नियम 5 के उप-नियम (3) के खंड (क) के अधीन नोटिस की अपेक्षा को समाप्त करने के पश्चात, सार्वजनिक हित में, भारत सरकार की अधिसूचना संख्या का. आ.1533(अ), तारीख 14 सितम्बर, 2006 में निम्नलिखित संशोधन करती है: अर्थात्:-

उक्त अधिसूचना में, परिशिष्ट-IX में, क्रम संख्या 6 और 7 और उससे संबंधित प्रविष्टियों के स्थान पर, निम्नलिखित क्रम संख्या और प्रविष्टियाँ रखी जाएंगी, अर्थात्:-

"6. सड़क, पाइपलाइन आदि जैसी रैखिक परियोजनाओं के लिए साधारण मिट्टी की निकासी, या सोर्सिंग या प्रयोग करना इस संबंध में समय-समय पर जारी मानक संचालन प्रक्रियाओं और पर्यावरणीय सुरक्षा उपायों के अनुपालन के अधीन होगा।

7. बांधों, तालाबों, मेड़ों, बैराजों, नदी और नहरों के अनुरक्षित और आपदा प्रबंधन के प्रयोजन के लिए तलमार्जन और गाद निकालना इस संबंध में समय-समय पर जारी मानक संचालन प्रक्रियाओं और पर्यावरणीय सुरक्षा उपायों के अनुपालन के अधीन होगा।

[फा.सं. 3-70/2020-आईए.III]

डॉ. सुजीत कुमार बाजपेयी, संयुक्त सचिव,

टिप्पण: मूल अधिसूचना भारत के राजपत्र, असाधारण भाग- 2, खंड 3, उप-खंड (ii) संख्या का. आ.1533(अ), तारीख 14 सितंबर, 2006 द्वारा प्रकाशित की गई और अधिसूचना क्रमांक का. आ. 2226(अ), तारीख 18 मई, 2023 द्वारा अंतिम बार संशोधित किया गया।

MINISTRY OF ENVIRONMENT, FOREST AND CLIMATE CHANGE

NOTIFICATION

New Delhi, the 30th August, 2023

S.O. 3840(E).—WHEREAS, the Central Government in the erstwhile Ministry of Environment and Forests, under sub-section (1) and clause (v) of sub-section (2) of section (3) of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 issued a notification vide number S.O.1533 (E), dated the 14th September, 2006 (hereinafter referred to as the EIA Notification) for mandating prior environmental clearance for certain categories of projects;

AND WHEREAS, the Central Government, *inter alia*, amended Appendix-IX to the EIA Notification vide notification number S.O. 1224(E), dated the 28th March, 2020, to exempt certain activities from the requirement of prior environmental clearance in respect of certain projects;

AND WHEREAS, the National Green Tribunal, Principal Bench at New Delhi vide its order dated the 28th October, 2020 in Original Application No. 190 of 2020 in the matter of Noble M Paikada vs. Union of India & Ors. passed the directions for revisiting the said notification;

NOW, THEREFORE, in exercise of the powers conferred by sub-section (1) and clause (v) of sub-section (2) of section 3 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986, (29 of 1986), read with sub-rule (4) of rule 5 of the Environment (Protection) Rules, 1986, the Central Government, after having dispensed with the requirement of notice under clause (a) of sub-rule (3) of rule 5 of the said rules, in public interest, hereby makes following further amendments in the notification of the Government of India number S.O 1533(E), dated the 14th September, 2006, namely:-

In the said notification, in Appendix-IX, for serial numbers 6 and 7 and the entries relating thereto, the following serial number and entries shall be substituted, namely:-

"6. Extraction or sourcing or borrowing of ordinary earth for the linear projects such as roads, pipelines, etc. shall be subject to the compliance of standard operating procedures and environmental safeguards issued in this regard from time to time.

7. Dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management shall be subject to the compliance of environmental safeguards issued in this regard from time to time."

[F. No. 3-70/2020-IA.III]

DR. SUJIT KUMAR BAJPAYEE, Jt. Secy.

Note: The principal notification was published in the Gazette of India, Extraordinary Part-II, Section 3, Sub-section (ii)vide, number S.O. 1533(E), dated the 14th September, 2006 and last amended vide the notification number S.O. 2226(E), dated the 18th May, 2023.

F. No. 3-70/2020-IA.III [141127]
Government of India
Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
(IA Division)

Indira Paryavaran Bhawan
Jor Bagh Road, Aliganj,
New Delhi - 110003

Dated: 12th July, 2023

OFFICE MEMORANDUM

Subject: Clarification on the exemption from EC provided vide Notification S.O. 1224 (E) dated 28.03.2020 for dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management - reg.

The Ministry, vide Notification S.O. 1224 (E) dated 28.03.2020, amended the appendix IX of EIA Notification to inter-alia provide exemption from Environmental Clearance (EC) for "*Dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management.*"

2. Subsequently, the above mentioned Notification was challenged before the National Green Tribunal, Principal Bench in Original Application No. 190/2020 in the matter of Noble M. Paikada Vs. Union of India & Ors., wherein the Hon'ble Tribunal while disposing of the application vide order dated 28.10.2020, *inter-alia* held that "*.....the exemption should strike balance and instead of being blanket exemption, it needs to be hedged by appropriate safeguards such as the process of excavation and quantum...*" and directed to revisit the impugned notification dated 28.03.2020.

3. Subsequently, the Ministry of Jal Shakti, Department of Water Resources, River Development and Ganga Rejuvenation in consultation with the MoEF&CC issued the National Framework for Sediment Management. The document deals with the issue of environmental safeguards pertaining to desilting/ dredging of dams, reservoirs etc.

4. The above mentioned framework was referred to the concerned Expert Appraisal Committee (EAC) for deliberation. After due deliberation, the EAC opined that the framework addresses the environmental concerns associated with the sediment management practices in dam/reservoirs/barrages in a comprehensive and holistic manner.

5. Based on the recommendations of the EAC and keeping in view the direction of Hon'ble NGT, the matter has been examined by the Ministry in detail and it is hereby directed that the exemption from EC provided vide S.O. 1224 (E) dated 28.03.2020 for dredging and desilting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals shall be subject to Environmental Safeguards as proposed in the National Framework for Sediment Management (*copy enclosed*) issued by the Ministry of Jal Shakti, Department of Water Resources, River Development and Ganga Rejuvenation as enclosed to this Office Memorandum.

6. This is issued with the approval of the Competent Authority.

Encl: as above.


(Sundar Ramanathan)
Scientist 'E'

To

1. Chairman, Central Pollution Control Board (CPCB)
2. Chairman and Member Secretaries of SEIAA/ SEACs
3. Chairpersons/Member Secretaries of all SPCBs/UTPCCs
4. All the Officers of I.A. Division

Copy for information to:

1. PS to Hon'ble Minister for Environment, Forest and Climate Change
2. PS to Hon'ble MoS (EF&CC)
3. PPS to Secretary (EF&CC)
4. PPS to DGF&SS (EF&CC)
5. PPS to AS(TK)/PPS to JS (SKB)
6. Website, MoEF&CC/Guard file



**Government of India
Ministry of Jal Shakti
Department of Water Resources,
River Development
and Ganga Rejuvenation**



National Framework for Sediment Management



FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY



सत्यमेव जयते



जल बचत – जल संचय

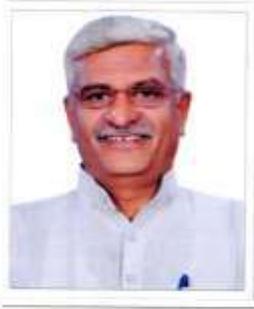
NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR SEDIMENT MANAGEMENT

MINISTRY OF JAL SHAKTI
DEPARTMENT OF WATER RESOURCES,
RIVER DEVELOPMENT & GANGA REJUVENATION

NEW DELHI
October, 2022

This page is left blank intentionally

गजेन्द्र सिंह शेखावत
Gajendra Singh Shekhawat



सत्यमेव जयते



जल शक्ति मंत्री
भारत सरकार
Minister for Jal Shakti
Government of India

FOREWORD

Rivers are extremely valuable natural resource and important part of human life. They are a major source of fresh water; a source of sustenance and featuring strongly in our cultures and religious practices. Rivers also act as agents of rich deposits of sediment which forms the flood plains and valleys. Often dams are constructed on rivers to store water and manage it for human use.

In present times, due to rapid urbanization and development, many new issues are coming up, leading to change in the river dynamics. Reservoirs are also losing their storage capacity because of sedimentation. Hence, comprehensive sediment management has now become the need of the hour for the sustainable development of the water resources of the country.

Ministry of Jal Shakti (MoJS) is actively involved in overall planning, policy formulation, coordination and management of the water resources of the country. MoJS has taken several policy initiatives and enacted legislations for managing the rivers from time to time. In yet another milestone, MoJS has come up with the Framework for Sediment Management, for managing the sediments in a holistic manner. This framework lays emphasis on sediment management through integrated river basin management plan. It provides reference of all existing guidelines/policies dealing with the various aspects of the sediment management.

The Framework will facilitate the concerned stakeholders such as the State Governments, other Ministries, departments etc. in planning strategies and implementation of projects giving due consideration to environment and ecology.

(Gajendra Singh Shekhawat)



Office : 210, Shram Shakti Bhawan, Rafi Marg, New Delhi-110 001
Tel: No. (011) 23711780, 23714663, 23714200, Fax : (011) 23710804
E-mail : minister_jalshakti@gov.in

This page is left blank intentionally

पंकज कुमार
PANKAJ KUMAR
सचिव
SECRETARY



भारत सरकार
जल शक्ति मंत्रालय
जल संसाधन, नदी विकास
और गंगा संरक्षण विभाग
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF JAL SHAKTI
DEPARTMENT OF WATER RESOURCES,
RIVER DEVELOPMENT & GANGA REJUVENATION



PREFACE

Rivers are our lifelines. They are enablers of human development. Rivers serve as an important source of drinking water, provide pathways for navigation as well as sediments to the floodplains. These sediments enrich the soil with nutrients. Deltas and river banks, where much sediment is deposited, are often the most fertile agricultural areas in a region. Areas rich in sediments are often rich in biodiversity. Sediments carried by the rivers include good quality sand which is extensively used in the construction industry.

However, rapid urbanization and development, impact natural processes of the river. Dams and barrages constructed across the river for various uses alter the flow dynamics and sediment distribution pattern. The impact of climate change on river flows presents another challenge. Sediment transport being a complex phenomenon, integrated sediment management in a river basin should be the way forward for sustainable management of sediment.

Ministry of Jal Shakti has prepared a "National Framework for Sediment Management". The formulation of the National Framework on Sediment Management is the result of the efforts put in by various officers of Department of Water Resources, River Development & Ganga Rejuvenation (DoWR, RD&GR) and Central Water Commission (CWC). The document has been prepared after extensive discussion and consultation with the State Governments/Union Territories and stakeholding Ministries/Departments.

The National Framework document will serve as a guidance document for management of sediment across the river basin. It is hoped that the National Framework will be made use of by stakeholders in line with other existing guidelines/policies for efficient and sustainable sediment management in the country.

(Pankaj Kumar)



This page is left blank intentionally

Abbreviations

BC Ratio	:	Benefit Cost Ratio
BIS	:	Bureau of Indian Standards
CWC	:	Central Water Commission
DoWR, RD & GR	:	Department of Water Resources, River Development and Ganga Rejuvenation
DPR	:	Detailed Project Report
DRIP	:	Dam Rehabilitation and Improvement Project
EPC	:	Engineering, Procurement and Construction
GIS	:	Geographic Information System
GoI	:	Government of India
GSI	:	Geological Survey of India
HKKP	:	Har Khet Ko Pani
IWAI	:	Inland Waterways Authority of India
MCM	:	Million Cubic Meter
MoEF&CC	:	Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
MoPSW	:	Ministry of Ports, Shipping and Waterways
MoRTH	:	Ministry of Road Transport and Highways
NHAI	:	National Highways Authority of India
NHIDCL	:	National Highways & Infrastructure Development Corporation Limited
NOC	:	No Objection Certificate
O&M	:	Operation and Maintenance
PMKSY	:	Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchayee Yojana
PSU	:	Public Sector Undertaking
RRR	:	Repair, Renovation and Restoration
SLUSI	:	Soil & Land Use Survey of India
SPCB	:	State Pollution Control Board
TAC	:	Technical Advisory Committee
ToR	:	Terms of Reference
UTPCC	:	Union Territory Pollution Control Committee

This page is left blank intentionally

Glossary of Terms

Aggradation	:	to raise the level of (a river valley, a stream bed, etc.) by depositing sediment, or the like.
Appurtenant structure	:	consists of spillways, low level outlet structure and water conduits, hydro-mechanical equipment, energy dissipation and river training structure and other associated structures acting integrally with the dam.
Bathymetry	:	a type of hydrographic survey that allow us to measure the depth of a water body as well as map the underwater features.
Bed Load	:	the sediment which is in almost continuous contact with the bed, carried forward by rolling, sliding or hopping.
Channel	:	a feature that conveys surface water and is open to the air.
Channelization	:	the straightening and deepening of a stream channel to permit the water to move faster or to drain a wet area for farming.
Contour Bunding and Trenching	:	the hill side is split up into small compartments on which the rain is retained and surface run-off is modified with prevention of soil erosion.
Degradation	:	process of lowering of channel bed due to the erosion of sediment
Density Current	:	as clear water of reservoir comes in contact with muddy inflow, due to the difference in densities a "stratified flow" condition occurs and the underflow is called as "density current".
Dredging	:	process that removes deposited sediment from the bottom of rivers/reservoirs using different techniques.
Estuary	:	an area where a freshwater river or stream meets the ocean.
Lateral connectivity	:	connectivity between channel-riparian and floodplain
Longitudinal connectivity	:	upstream and downstream connectivity
NOC	:	No Objection Certificate.
Riparian	:	pertaining to the banks of streams, wetlands, lakes or tidewater.
Sediment Budgeting	:	an accounting of the inflow, outflow, and storage changes of sediment in a river/reservoir system.

This page is left blank intentionally

- Suspended Load** : part of the total sediment transport which is maintained in suspension by turbulence in the flowing water for considerable periods of time without contact with the stream bed.
- Trap efficiency** : the ratio of total deposited sediment to the total sediment inflow.
- Wash Load** : consists of fine particles, which do not exist on the bed of the reach under consideration, which remain in suspension throughout the reach.
- Watershed** : an area of land that contains a common set of streams and rivers that all drain into a single larger body of water, such as a larger river, a lake or an ocean.

This page is left blank intentionally

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Para no	Subject	Page
	Abbreviations	
	Glossary of Terms	
	Preamble	01
1.0	Composition of Sediment and Transport	02
1.1	Sedimentation in Rivers and Reservoirs	02
1.1.1	Rivers	02
1.1.2	Reservoirs	03
2.0	Basic Principles of Sediment Management	03
2.1	Sediment Management in Watershed	03
2.2	Sediment Management in Rivers	05
2.2.1	Effect of De-siltation in Reducing Floods	05
2.2.2	Extraction for Navigational Purpose	05
2.2.3	Extraction for Economic Uses	05
2.2.4	Indispensable Removal	06
2.3	Sediment Management in Reservoirs	06
2.3.1	Measures to Minimise Sediment Deposition in Reservoirs	06
2.3.2	De-silting of Reservoirs	07
2.3.3	Database & Survey	11
2.3.4	Retrofitting of existing Dams	11
2.3.5	Institutions and Financing	11
2.4	Sediment Management for Lakes / Water Bodies	12
3.0	Climate Change Perspective	12
4.0	Environment & Social safeguards	13
5.0	Disposal of Dredged / De-silted materials	13
6.0	Evaluation of Sediment Management Projects	14
7.0	Appraisal of Proposal	14
Annexure-I	Sedimentation process in Rivers and Reservoirs	17
Annexure-II	Approach of Sediment Management for Rivers	21
Annexure-III	Dredging/De-silting / Mining Restrictions	29
Annexure-IV	Sediment - A Resource	33
Annexure-V	Measures for Sediment Management in Reservoir	37
Annexure-VI	Suggestive composition of State Technical Advisory Committee	45

NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR SEDIMENT MANAGEMENT

PREAMBLE

Sediment transport, bank erosion and associated channel mobility represent key physical processes of rivers; their understanding is of crucial importance for defining river restoration and management strategies. Most alluvial rivers have experienced increased sedimentation or bed load deficit, both due to natural processes and series of human interventions in the river catchment along the river bank or on river itself and in the riparian zone. Rapid urbanization and industrialization in flood plains, encroachment of river beds, changes due to various human activities and deforestation in catchment area of rivers etc are the main causes of increased sedimentation in rivers. Problem of sedimentation in rivers is somewhat moderated by trapping sediment in reservoirs. However, it results in loss of reservoir storage thereby reducing its benefits and serviceable life.

Sediment management in reservoirs and dams is becoming crucial to water resources development and management. Reservoirs have been used worldwide to provide reliable water supply for irrigation, domestic, industrial, hydro power generation, and flood management etc. Dams have contributed significantly towards economic development, food production security, resilience building against natural disaster (droughts and floods) and mitigation of ill effects of climate changes. Old dams have traditionally been designed with a certain “design life”, typically 50 or 100 years, which were determined by sedimentation rate, trap efficiency, provision of sediment storage pool volume (dead storage). Most reservoirs are therefore gradually being filled up. The annual reservoir storage loss globally due to sedimentation is around 0.5 to 1 % in average but varies easily between 0 and 5% depending on the location. Half of the dams in India are more than 25 years old. As the ageing dams approach the end of their original design lives and depletion of their storage capacity due to sedimentation, water scarcity will be more widespread. Thus, there is an urgent need to update policies and guidelines for exploring all options for alleviating the impact of reservoir sedimentation.

Common practices carried out by river management agencies demonstrate that sediment management has rarely been based upon best practices developed on scientific knowledge. For these reasons, a different approach to sediment management is desirable, incorporating: (i) knowledge and management of sediments at the basin scale; (ii) a wider application of available scientific knowledge.

While keeping rivers in pristine condition is the ultimate goal, development of civilization has always been on the banks of the rivers, to utilise blessings of the rivers and their water. Dams and barrages have to be constructed across the river to utilise the water resources for overall development of the country and the society. Therefore, sediment issues in dams, barrages and rivers cannot be dealt separately. For a sensible sustainable sediment management in rivers and reservoirs, it is necessary to adopt a scientific framework for sediment management at national level. This national framework document highlights the key issues related to sediment management and recommendations for policy-makers and stakeholders. The document is prepared to take appropriate actions and measures by the concerned Departments and other stakeholders.

1.0 COMPOSITION OF SEDIMENT AND TRANSPORT:

Sediment transport is the movement of organic (humus, decomposing material such as algae, leaves etc.) and inorganic particles by water. This is related with the total energy available with water, composition of the river bank material/catchment soil composition & topography along with other factors like seismic/tectonic activity and anthropogenic factors. In other words, greater the quantity of flow and velocity, the more sediment will be conveyed. Water flow can be strong enough to suspend particles in the water column as they move downstream, or simply push them along the bottom of a waterway. The intermediate type of movement where particles move downstream in a series of bounces or jumps, sometimes touching the bed and sometimes carried along in suspension until they fall back to the bed is called saltation. Transported sediment may include mineral matter, chemicals, pollutants and organic material. The total transported sediment load includes all particles moving as bed load, suspended load and wash load (very fine particles). As per BIS Code IS: 6339 (as been revised in 2013), the classification of coarse, medium and fine sediment is as under:

Sediment type	Particle size
Coarse sediment	$D > 0.25$ mm
Medium sediment	$D = 0.062$ mm to 0.25 mm
Fine sediment	$D < 0.062$ mm

1.1 Sedimentation in Rivers and Reservoirs

Deposition and erosion of sediment along the length of river is a natural phenomenon. However, sediment deposition at any place in river depends on many factors such as the stages of rivers, catchment/ watershed/ drainage characteristics, its size, geological disposition along the course of the river and human interventions, whereas erosion of soil in the catchment of a river is greatly governed by rainfall & its intensity, slope, soil characteristics, forestation etc. of the catchment area.

Siltation is a natural process through which river tries to reach to a stable regime condition.

Similarly, sedimentation in reservoirs is also a natural process. The detailed process of siltation/sedimentation in rivers and reservoirs is given at **Annexure-I**. Policy intervention requires due attention in the reaches where human settlement and economic activities are extended. Sediment is a socio-economic, environmental and geo-morphological resource, as well as a tool of nature. However, changes in sediment quantity and quality can have a significant impact both in rivers and reservoirs and prove to be resource as well as menace in its own manner.

1.1.1 Rivers:

Sediment in rivers mainly contains boulders, cobbles, pebbles, sand, silt and clay. Sand has high economic value and is a valuable material largely used in construction works. Due to huge demand of sand, MoEF&CC, Govt. of India has come up with "Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines – 2016 and supplemental document "Enforcement and monitoring guidelines for sand mining-2020". Boulders, cobbles and pebbles are also very important for construction industry.

However, when sediment in rivers is deposited at undesirable place, it turns into a menace. It may cause aggradation and degradation. Further, it also causes meandering, braiding and widening of rivers, which in turn causes erosion of river banks and endangers the embankments and settlements on the banks of rivers. Sedimentation in rivers also causes reduction of navigable depth and rising of river beds causing drainage congestion. In such cases, it becomes necessary to remove the sediment by suitable means at selected places.

1.1.2 Reservoirs:

Due to reduction of velocity of water in reservoirs, part of incoming sediment gets trapped. Sedimentation in reservoir results in loss of capacity, impacts dam safety, risk to downstream habitation etc. as sedimentation in reservoirs is generally accumulative. By removal of sediment, the capacity and life of a reservoir can be extended, planned operational benefits can be ensured, and minimise the risk to downstream stakeholders.

2.0 BASIC PRINCIPLES OF SEDIMENT MANAGEMENT

2.1 Sediment Management in Watershed

It is imperative to minimise the sediment intake to a minimum level for a dam or reservoir for its optimal functionality and longevity. This involves a two-pronged approach: catchment area treatment and appropriate land use planning to address unsustainable land use to reduce soil erosion & sediment production. Catchment area interventions need to be given priority as it arrests silt within the boundary of a watershed which will help in minimizing siltation in river bed & reservoirs. Details on catchment area treatment/intervention are given in **Annexure II**. The steps to reduce sediment inflow must include determination of inflow of silt into the river/reservoir. Sediment inflow assessment may be based on soil erosion modelling and silt monitoring along with assessment of agronomic practices and other land-based activities, point & non-point source of pollutions, agriculture run-off in the catchment, which is essential to determine quantity and quality of sediment and the reservoir's rate of sedimentation.

To reduce sediment production in the watershed sustainably, the following actions should be taken:

- (i) study watershed characteristics
- (ii) current status of watershed management activities
- (iii) assess the vulnerability of watershed in terms of soil erosion by using available observed sediment data at various streams G&D sites, water reservoirs (if hydrographic survey data available), soil loss modelling, to identify and prioritise the degraded micro-watershed for treatment with biological and engineering measures for erosion control,
- (iv) stream bank erosion control using various river training works
- (v) trapping sediment upstream in river before entering into reservoir and
- (vi) planting trees to provide vegetation cover and retention to the soil for preventing erosion.

To start with, the Digital Micro Watershed Atlas of India- 2019 of Soil and Land Use Survey of India (SLUSI), Ministry of Agriculture can be followed for delineation & management planning. The “Common Guidelines for Watershed Development Projects”, Department of Land Resources, 2008, Ministry of Rural Development, Govt. of India may be referred for development of watershed

projects. For implementation of the watershed programme, a synergy is required to ensure the convergence of various programs implemented by the various central ministries and State Governments.

2.2 Sediment Management in Rivers

The following basic principles should be followed for sediment management of Indian rivers:-

1. Sediment management should become a part of integrated river basin management plan. Regular sediment budgeting for all basins should be done especially which are affected by heavy siltation problem.
2. Removal of sediments from river bed may help in channelization of river flow during the lean season and improve the navigability, but will not have any considerable effect on flood levels.
3. There is natural deposition of sediments upstream of any barrage, but this attains equilibrium after few years. Desiltation in upstream of a barrage may be taken for channelization of stream flow. However proper operation of Gates should be ensured for reducing sediment deposition in the upstream of the Barrages/Wier.
4. Urbanization and infrastructure development works like buildings, roads, embankments etc. require large amount of sediment. The quantity of sediment removed in such cases from the river shall be limited to the extent to which it does not harm the ecology of river or gainfully utilized in developmental works, whichever amount is less. Exploitable quantity should be determined "a-priori" and the reach should be monitored for excessive exploitative practices.
5. There is a need to pursue the de-siltation/dredging schemes with utmost care backed by scientific study, including simulations through mathematical and/or physical model study at appropriate scales and employing consistent formulations applicable to the given site. Mathematical and/or physical model study is exempted for dredging/de-siltation carried out for navigation purpose by Inland Waterways Authority of India.
6. If necessary, permanent observation stations may be opened for collecting data such as cross-section, hydrological observation etc. This should be coupled with periodic monitoring of various morphological changes with space technology such as formation of shoals, meandering tendency of the river, effect of construction of hydraulic structures, damages to the bank, effect of afforestation/ deforestation and tectonic occurrences. Data sharing mechanism is to be established in case of an inter-state river.
7. Different approaches of sediment management may be resorted to in rivers depending upon the stages of the river. The details of the same, along with some other management strategies are given in **Annexure-II**.
8. Sediment management action must follow best practices to minimize damage to the environment and river morphology. Restriction details for de-siltation/dredging are placed at **Annexure-III**.

9. In case, if it is not possible to utilise sediment removed by dredging/de-silting of rivers; a proper utilisation/disposal plan needs to be prepared, with the consideration that it does not create any environmental, ecological and social issues.

2.2.1 Effect of De-siltation in Reducing Floods

In general, de-silting of rivers does significantly affect flood levels. In this regard, it is mentioned that the Mittal Committee was constituted by the erstwhile Ministry of Water Resources in the year 2001, under the Chairmanship of Dr. B.K. Mittal, Former Chairman, Central Water Commission. The main objectives of the Committee were to identify the cause and extent of siltation in rivers, to suggest measures to minimize siltation, to examine as to whether de-silting is a technically feasible means to minimize magnitude of floods in rivers, to suggest appropriate technology/ methods of de-silting of rivers, to propose a realistic operational programme in a time-bound manner and other related aspects. The findings/recommendations of the Committee were as follows:

- (i) De-silting of rivers for flood control is not an economically viable solution;
- (ii) Dredging in general has been found to be inadequate and should not be resorted to, particularly in major rivers;
- (iii) There are, of course, some locations such as tidal rivers, confluence points with narrow constrictions and the like which can be tackled by de-silting after thorough examination and techno-economic justification;
- (iv) Selective dredging is suggested depending upon local conditions; and
- (v) De-silting of rivers can marginally minimize the magnitude of floods and be effective only for a short period.

However, selective need-based dredging of certain reaches of rivers coupled with structural and non-structural measures may be considered in order to protect habitation, agriculture land, airports, industrial and institutional installations etc.

2.2.2 Extraction for Navigational Purpose

Inland Waterways Authority of India (IWAI) is required to carry out dredging to clear shoals/shallow patches on fairways in National Waterways as a mandatory functional requirement in terms of provisions of Section 14 (Chapter IV) of IWAI Act, 2016 (82 of 85).

The above dredging shall be necessitated to be carried out at frequent intervals as and when shoals are surfaced and identified based on continuous fortnightly/monthly bathymetric surveys being carried out by IWAI. This maintenance dredging is also required to be taken up at short notice and complete the dredging in a time bound manner to facilitate navigation. The above maintenance activities of dredging including its disposal are also exempted from obtaining clearance from MoEF&CC.

2.2.3 Extraction for Economic Uses

Sediment deposit in both rivers and reservoirs at some places contains considerable quantity of sand. In places where sediment deposits are having good sand content (of the order of 30% - 40%), it is possible to extract sand from sediment to meet the ever-increasing demand of sand. Sediment component such as silt and clay bears comparatively lesser economic value but still can be used in many works such as for brick making, as filling material, construction of embankments, roads,

constructing raised platforms for flood proofing etc. Its different uses are given at **Annexure-IV**. There is possibility of revenue generation in such cases.

2.2.4 Indispensable Removal

Many a time, excess deposition of sediment at undesirable places causes bank erosion, shifting of river course and navigational issues. Sediment deposition on the mouth of a river may cause large scale flooding due to drainage congestion. At many places, sediment needs to be removed from a river to channelize it to bring it to its original course especially during pre-monsoon and post monsoon. In such cases, it is imperative to remove the sediment by practically suitable means. Similarly, in some old reservoirs, especially those which are supplying drinking water, sediment removal becomes necessary to regain their capacity. In hydro-power projects, excess deposition of sediment just below the intake level of turbines hamper their operation and has to be removed with suitable means.

2.3 Sediment Management in Reservoirs

The importance of reservoir sedimentation management is evident when one considers that the cost of replacing storage lost annually due to sediment deposition throughout the world is significant. If sedimentation can be managed successfully, the loss in reservoir storage space due to this phenomenon can be lowered and life of reservoir can be prolonged significantly. The benefit of effective reservoir sedimentation management is enormous.

It is possible to successfully manage reservoir sedimentation by using comprehensive sediment management strategy coupled with measures to reduce sediment yield from watershed, route sediments around or through storage, and recover the lost capacity of reservoir through de-silting. Integrated management of reservoir sedimentation is easy to manage for new reservoirs which can be integrated at planning stage itself. In the existing reservoirs, one or combination of more than one technique can be explored in a holistic way. None of single technique/measure can be 100% effective for long term sustainability of sediment management in reservoirs. Due consideration shall be given to address environmental and social safeguards during the planning stage. In addition to this, robust institutional and sound financing mechanism forms the integral part of comprehensive planning and implementation strategy for sediment management.

The brief detail of framework for addressing sediment problems in reservoirs are given in the following paras.

2.3.1 Measures to Minimise Sediment Deposition in Reservoirs

The main source of incoming sediment to any reservoir is catchment erosion. Therefore, the first step to address the root cause of incoming sediment is watershed management through various engineering and bio-engineering techniques to arrest sediment erosion effectively. The next step is to manage the sediment deposited in the river by routing the sediment around or through the storage by various kinds of sediment by-pass and sediment pass-through interventions. There are structural and non-structural techniques for sediment routing. Sediment Bypass, include Flood Bypass Channel or Tunnel and off-stream reservoirs for bypassing sediment inflows away from reservoirs. Sediment pass-through strategies including draw-down flushing (complete and partial), pressure flushing, sluicing and venting turbid density currents are non-structural interventions comprising operational techniques for evacuating sediment from the reservoirs.

There are several techniques for sediment routing that take advantage of temporal variation in sediment discharge, managing flows during periods of highest sediment yield to minimize sediment trapping in the reservoir. The basic strategy is to impound the clear water and release the sediment-laden flood flows. Sediment routing techniques require a part of the river inflow and storage volume for transporting sediment around or through the reservoir. Consequently, this may not be feasible in reservoirs, where all the inflow is being captured and stored. However, as reservoir capacity is diminished by sedimentation, sediment routing may become more feasible.

The sediment not arrested through the above referred two stages, partially gets deposited in the reservoir and part of it is discharged downstream of the reservoir (suspended and colloidal). The deposited sediment in the reservoir is to be dredged to restore the lost capacity to the possible extent keeping in view techno-economic and environmental feasibility.

2.3.2 De-silting of Reservoirs

Sediment deposit in reservoirs may have adverse impact on storage, as well as safety of dams. The safety of reservoirs is directly having huge consequences to the downstream habitations as well as other vital installations along with the planned benefits. Dam safety requirement shall be complied with, when it comes to enforcing constructive or operational sediment management measures; at no time should such measures lead to an unacceptable state of dam safety.

Sediment management measures to reclaim live storage, to improve operations or for environmental reasons shall be in compliance with applicable environmental requirement, unless they are necessary to preserve immediate dam safety, and prevent an uncontrolled release of reservoir water that could lead to even larger environmental damages or cause loss of life, injuries or large damages to properties in the downstream area.

At the same time, for existing reservoirs; in case of high sediment inflow, long term integrated watershed management shall be explored effectively. In some of existing large reservoir(s), watershed management has resulted substantial reduction in erosion in turn reduced the sediment inflow viz. in Maithon Reservoir, initial average annual loss of capacity of 7.38 MCM reduced currently to 1.37 MCM over a period of time.

Annual loss of overall storage of Panchet Reservoir was reduced from 14.98 MCM/year (years 1959-66) to 4.06 MCM/year (years 1996- 2019) considering the maximum flood management pool of 132.62m (435 ft.) mainly on the ground of construction of Tenughat Dam upstream of Panchet Dam.”

MAITHON DAM WATERSHED MANAGEMENT



Drainage line treatment



Rainwater harvesting structures

Maithon dam (Damodar Valley Corporation - DVC) is a 56.08 m high composite dam constructed across river Barakar, Dhanbad District (Jharkhand). The initial gross storage capacity of Maithon dam is 1196 MCM with live storage of 607 MCM considering the Maximum flood management pool of 150.91 m (495 ft.) and minimum drawdown level of 132.62 m (435 ft.)

- It is a multipurpose dam with main function of flood control, supplying water for irrigation, Municipal & Industrial use, hydro power generation, and tourism. The construction commenced in December' 1951 and completed in September' 1957.
- Damodar Valley Corporation is working since 1949-50 to tackle the soil erosional problems in upper Damodar-Barakar catchment area through soil and water conservation/integrated watershed management programs with multidisciplinary approach by its Soil Conservation Department located at Hazaribagh.



Key Soil Conservation Measures

- ✓ Afforestation, Pastoral Development, Contour Trenching
- ✓ Field hedge, pasture and horticultural development, drainage line treatments, silt detention dams, ponds' renovation, reclamation of land, demonstrations on moisture conservation
- ✓ Construction of water harvesting structures

- Measures have played a significant role in arresting sediment deposition by more than 60% which has resulted, among other benefits, in reducing loss rates in storage capacity from 7.38 MCM/year (years 1955-65) to 1.37 MCM/Year (years 2002-19).

The structural invention(s) which includes renovation of low-level permanent river outlet with appropriate replacement provision for original valve with a new gate to allow sluicing during high flow event, renovation of power plant penstocks by replacing few penstock with a sluicing pipe and modifying the other penstock for electricity generation, retrofitting of dams by providing de-silting tunnel(s), silt-bypass weir/tunnel(s)/ tank/ chamber(s), de-silting etc. can be explored on case to case basis keeping in view engineering and techno-economic and environmental feasibility in providing such modifications. Such typical strategies have been experimented in Shihmen reservoir, Taiwan.

SHIHMEN DAM (TAIWAN) SEDIMENT MANAGEMENT

The reservoir management in Taiwan faces lots of challenge. The main source of rainfall is the northeast monsoon. Mean annual precipitation is about 2500 mm/year. On an average 3 to 4 typhoon strike the country every year. Soil erosion is very high, almost having a rate of 3 to 6 mm/year. Shihmen dam is located very near to Taoyuan city of Taiwan. It was commissioned in year 1964

- The gross storage capacity is 309 MCM. This dam is a classic example of post construction retrofitting for integrated sediment management. The journey of sediment management started by construction of 121 check dams which majority of these got filled by year 2007. It is estimated that annual inflow of sediment in reservoir is 3.42 MCM.

SUSTAINABLE SEDIMENT MANAGEMENT STRATEGIES AT SHIHMEN DAM



Sediment yield reduction (Check Dams)



Mechanical & Hydraulic Dredging



Sluicing



Routing-venting turbidity currents



Simultaneous operation of spillway and penstock sluice venting turbid density current

- Then structural inventions included modification of permanent river outlet gates (4%) by replacing the original Howell-Bunger valve with a jet flow gate to allow sluicing during high flow events, renovated the power plant penstocks, replacing one penstock with a sluicing pipe and modifying the other penstock for electricity generation (55%), introduction of two nos of sediment-bye pass tunnels i.e. Dawanping (21%, under construction) and amuping (19%, commissioned) silt sluice tunnels. Also, some part is managed by dredging near dam(15%) and dredging upstream of dam(12%). This arrangement is almost balancing the inflow sediment with outgoing sediment volume

A majority of Indian reservoirs have been built through conventional design life approach rather than life cycle management approach. The latter approach considers storage as renewable as compared to exhaustible by first one. Furthermore, abandoning dam sites may not be affordable in any respect, as available sites for new reservoirs are very limited. Hence, there exist ample scope and cost-effectiveness in prolonging their lifetime.

De-silting plan for a given reservoir should be comprehensive. It shall be prepared based on latest bathymetry survey inputs along with representative sub profiling data of a given reservoir. The basic information shall include various methods of dredging along with their utilities and performances in accordance with different specific site conditions, proposed method with justification, estimated cost and proposed dredging volume, revenue and non-revenue models, cost benefit analysis vis-a-vis restored capacity, disposal plan of dredged material with detail of sediment stacking and processing yard, method of contract which include EPC/turnkey or work contract method with fixed time schedule, environment and social safeguards and monitoring mechanism etc. The de-silting of Manglam Dam in Kerala is a classic example of revenue model under implementation.

MANGALAM DAM'S REVENUE MODEL FOR DE-SILTATION

- ❑ Mangalam dam, was commissioned in 1957. The original gross storage and live storage are 25.49 MCM and 25.34 MCM respectively. Reservoir offers water for Irrigation, and drinking water to the people of Palakkad district, Kerala.



Wet Dredging at Mangalam Dam

- ❑ As per hydrographic survey of 2015 including sub-bottom profiling sampling (grid size 50mx50m) the revised capacity of Mangalam reservoir is 19.9 MCM.
- ❑ Kerala Water Resources Department published a **Standard Operating Procedure for de-silting of reservoirs** in year 2017. Mangalam dam was the first de-silting project taken up.
- ❑ Since deposited sediment was found to be comprised about 60% of silt and clay; and 35% sand, State government adopted a revenue-based model, with turnkey method of contracting, for using sediment as a resource (e.g., agricultural, construction, and pottery activities)

SUSTAINABLE SEDIMENT
MANAGEMENT STRATEGIES
AT MANGALAM DAM

▶▶



Mechanical (dry) and
Hydraulic (wet)
dredging



Revenue-based Model
for Sediment
Management



Revenue Model using
sediment as resource

- ❑ The revenue model resulted in earning of Rs 17 Cr, completely subsuming the cost of de-silting of Rs. 107 Cr. Although, de-silting amount is not very large, but this revenue-based model is very encouraging for dam owners by restoring lost capacity of about 3.0 MCM which is equivalent to creation of additional water storage in true sense.

The following basic principles should be followed in De-silting of reservoirs:

- i. Regular monitoring of sediment deposition in reservoir should be carried out. Integrated Bathymetry survey with sub-profiling sampling needs to be done to determine the actual quantity of sedimentation in reservoirs and estimation of the rate of sedimentation.
- ii. For reservoirs selected for potential intervention, it is necessary to perform a diagnosis of the sedimentation problem, formulate and select the most viable management alternative, prior to implementing the selected measures.
- iii. In case, if it is not possible to utilise sediment removed by dredging/de-silting / flushing from reservoirs; a proper utilisation/disposal plan needs to be prepared, with the consideration that it does not create any environmental, ecological and social issues.

- iv. De-siltation for restoring the lost capacity of the reservoirs may be carried out by comparative analysis of revenue and non-revenue models. For reservoirs, which are constructed for providing drinking water supply as well as other strategic services, de-silting may be done on need basis including non-revenue model. Also for safety of dam, it requires the de-silting; this may be preceded to other concern keeping in view associated disaster consequences.
- v. De-siltation/Dredging/Flushing in the cascade of reservoirs depends on the natural sediment load and may be shared between reservoirs. Appropriate monitoring mechanism along with institutional strengthening provision shall be inbuilt items in any programme of sedimentation management of reservoirs especially once the reservoir located in a lower riparian State is affected, when carried out in the reservoir, due care should be taken so that it does not affect downstream reservoirs. Proper consultation, with the reservoir authorities of downstream projects should be done. In case of hydro-power plants, each project or cascade projects should have coordinated Standard Operating Procedure (SOP), so that to the extent possible, sediment concentration may follow normal river regime during flushing.
- vi. De-siltation/dredging work shall not affect any existing structures/ facilities. De-siltation, especially in reservoirs shall be done in such a manner that it does not induce any landslides and slip circle failure in case of quick drawdown conditions. Restriction details for de-siltation/dredging are placed at **Annexure-III**.
- vii. In financing for new facilities, sediment management measures are considered to be an integral part of the facility cost. A life-cycle management approach shall always be recommended. For de-silting existing reservoirs, recurrent measures are financed through O&M budget. Reclamation of live storage is to be considered as like creating a new facility. Also, de-silting for reinstating safe operation is financed like other rehabilitation works (e.g. DRIP).
- viii. Financing de-silting in cascades of reservoirs depends on the natural sediment load and may be shared between the reservoirs. Appropriate monitoring mechanism along with institutional strengthening provision shall be inbuilt items in any program of sedimentation management. Also, in case de-silted material is discharged or dumped in the downstream of dam, impacting immediate downstream reservoir located in lower riparian State, proposed Plan may also be shared with lower riparian State. In case of a reservoir having interstate implications, the downstream states should have a member in the State/Central TAC.
- ix. The dredged material is a resource and the beneficial reuse in convergence with various concern organisation/agencies will not only bring direct economic values, but also social and environmental merits. Hence its end use should be part of comprehensive action plan. The possible major use of dredged material includes land reclamation, improvement & filling, construction & protection materials (for highways, railways, flood protection embankment etc.), top soil enhancement and agricultural use, habitat creation and restoration, beach nourishment and shore protection, river management (e.g. sand plug for channel closure) etc.
- x. A Feasibility Report should be prepared considering various techniques of removal of sediment. The economic analysis of long term benefits owing to consideration of removed sediment as a resource should be an important part of the feasibility report. Restored capacity of reservoir should be considered equivalent to creation of new live storage and apart from the intended benefits in terms of various uses of reservoir water

(irrigation, drinking water, industrial water, hydro power, fisheries, tourism etc.), the benefits from selling of sand for construction purpose, silt and clay for pottery and tiling industries in the open market by the contractor should also be considered for cost-benefit analysis. The use of revenue model shall be invariably explored. However, in case of strategic restoration of lost capacity (like drinking water, trans-boundary rivers etc.), even the non-revenue model may be considered. In order to ensure credible and bankable competitive bidding, the bid document shall be supported in terms of proposed volume and composition of dredged sediment through a latest close interval sub-bed profiling data of reservoir.

The details about the measures that can be adopted for sediment management of reservoir are listed in **Annexure-V**.

2.3.3 Data Base & Survey:

- i. Dam owners / Project Authority must carry out integrated bathymetry survey with sub-profiling sediment sampling of all large reservoirs of the country, keeping in view proper intervention for reclaiming of storage to improve water security. The survey is to be carried out at prescribed as per Compendium on sedimentation of reservoirs in India (2020).
- ii. For preparation of strategic action plan for handling the challenge of reservoir sedimentation in future, integrated Bathymetry Survey and Sub-bottom Profiling should be conducted compulsorily. The sub bottom profiling would give the thickness of underwater sediment, its composition (type), density etc.
- iii. Remote sensing Technique can be used for regular sediment assessment.
- iv. GIS-based model for predicting sediment quantity and quality based on basin characteristics and river flow can be developed.
- v. Video documentation of entire exercise of de-siltation, dredging, and other interventions executed for sediment management can be made so that cross learning can be promoted.

2.3.4 Retrofitting of Existing Dams

Retrofitting of existing dams: keeping in view availability of very limited sites for construction of new storage reservoir(s) along with various other challenges including R&R and environment impacts, dam owner(s)/Project Authority/(ies) may explore for retrofitting of few dams at a marginal cost. This retrofitting can be in many forms i.e. increasing the height of dam to the safe extent possible to create additional storage to meet extra demand, harnessing the available much easy hydroelectric potential at appropriate location(s), pumped storage option(s) etc. to make these reservoirs part of climate resilient strategies.

2.3.5 Institutions and Financing:

Certain guiding principles determine the arrangement of institutional setup and financing: Firstly, sediment management measures must never compromise dam safety and result in unacceptable state of dam safety. Secondly, sediment management measures must comply with prevailing environmental requirements, unless dam safety requires otherwise. Thirdly, reservoir sediment management is to be considered as an integral part of planning, design and operation of any new facility. Finally, sediment

management decisions follow similar considerations, needs, rules, processes as those for other environmental projects.

For de-silting of existing reservoirs, recurrent measures are financed through O&M budget. In order to handle the challenge of reservoir sedimentation on long term basis, all owners of reservoirs shall initiate policy interventions for earmarking certain percentage of dam revenues for carrying out de-siltation activities for sustainable dam operation and maintenance. Reclamation of live storage is to be considered akin to creating a new facility.

Financing de-silting in cascades of reservoirs depends on the natural sediment load and may be shared between reservoirs. Appropriate monitoring mechanism along with institutional strengthening provision shall be inbuilt items in any programme of sedimentation management.

2.4 Sediment Management for Lakes/Water Bodies

Lakes and water bodies constitute important habitats and food resources for a diverse array of fish, aquatic life, and wildlife. These are of great importance to mankind. They regulate the flow of river. During the rainy season, they prevent flooding and they help to maintain the flow of water during the dry season. Therefore, sediment management for Lakes and Water bodies are equally important for their sustenance. The scheme, namely, “Repair, Renovation & Restoration (RRR) of Water Bodies” is under implementation by Ministry of Jal Shakti, GoI with the objective of comprehensive improvement and restoration of water bodies in the country presently covered under the “Guidelines for the scheme on Repair, Renovation and Restoration (RRR) of Water Bodies under PMKSY (HKKP) – 2022”.

3.0 CLIMATE CHANGE PERSPECTIVE

Climate change is now an unequivocally accepted phenomenon, which in turn will result in increased hydrologic variability. This is an emerging challenge for development and sustainability of water resources management. The water storage infrastructure more generally, are appropriate focal points for both sustainable development and climate resilience. In turn, sediment management is a necessary element of sustainable and climate-resilient plan that includes reservoir storage and hydro-power generation.

Climate change, such as more frequent and intense rain events, can increase erosion and result in greater amounts of sediment washing from watershed, reaching into rivers and reservoirs. To mitigate adverse impact of climate change in reliability of water supply, construct reservoir storage spaces as large as possible. In reservoir sediment management context, developing and retaining enough reservoir storage space to satisfy water supply needs over the very long term requires inclusion of reservoir sediment management facilities in dam and reservoir designs right from the start, at project conception. It requires abandoning the conventional design life approach to dam design and adopting a life-cycle management approach.

In run-of-river projects, sediment management aims to improve operational efficiency. If sediment is not removed from run-of-river facilities before it enters the canal heads/the turbines, it may cause heavy siltation in canals and clogging of the cooling water intakes of the electro-mechanical equipment and also abrasion of the blades of the turbine, which decrease the efficiency as well as increase operation and maintenance costs and diminish the amount of power that can be generated. The objective of sediment management in storage

projects is to ensure project longevity for storing large amounts of water for planned benefits and use during droughts. Such storage also provides the opportunity to attenuate floods up to some extent.

The life cycle of dams and reservoirs consists of operation and maintenance, continued and regular implementation of reservoir sediment management approaches, and regular refurbishment of the dam and its appurtenant structures. Reservoir sediment management and refurbishment of the dam and its appurtenant structures allow for continued use of the dam and its reservoir, ideally in perpetuity. In principle, the approach does not include the element of disposal. A major difference between the life-cycle management approach and the design life approach is the focus on preventing storage loss caused by reservoir sedimentation. It eliminates the threat of losing the reservoir's ability to store water over the very long term and promotes continued use of the dam and reservoir, providing utility to both current and future generations.

4.0 ENVIRONMENT AND SOCIAL SAFEGUARDS

Dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, rivers and canals for purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management is exempted from environment clearance as per S.O.141(E) of MoEF&CC dated 15th January, 2016. However, reservoir sediment management methods such as by-passing, flushing or de-silting of existing reservoirs are associated with environment & social risks and impacts, which are to be identified based on interventions proposed and locational sensitivity, if any, such as dam/reservoir located in protected area, reservoirs notified as wetlands/bird sanctuaries, etc. and some of the above interventions would involve creation of new infrastructures. In such cases all statutory clearances will be required. Wild life clearance would be applicable if reservoir is in a notified protected area. For structural intervention for sediment by-passing in existing dams or any other activity, if the land required is forest land, diversion of forest land would attract forest clearance process as per Forest Conservation Act, 1980.

For the de-siltation activity, a proper Feasibility Report along with Environment Management Plan to dispose the silt is required to be prepared as per the guidelines provided in the "Handbook for Assessing and Managing Reservoir Sedimentation", CWC,2019. "Operational Procedures for Assessing and Managing Environmental Impacts in Existing Dam Projects", Central Water Commission, November 2020 with competent level approval of MoEF&CC, can be referred for the environmental and social safeguard issues related to de-silting in the existing dams in context of various statutory and regulatory norms.

5.0 DISPOSAL OF DREDGED / DESILTED MATERIALS

- a) The proposal for de-siltation/ dredging activities shall be prepared as per applicable guidelines and prior approval may be taken from concerned agencies to ensure hassle free implementation. River gravels/sands/silts are valuable resource and could be used gainfully in construction works, including housing, roads, embankment and land reclamation activities.
- b) Appropriate sediment disposal plan shall be a part of Feasibility Report along with applicable Environment and Social safeguards. Dredged material shall be disposed as per the approved Environmental Management Plan. It should not contaminate any water body, adverse impact to the flora and fauna existing adjacent to the disposal site(s) etc.
- c) Desilted material should not be used for filling up of wetlands and water bodies including oxbow lakes, as these are important for recharging ground water and providing base flow in rivers during lean season.

- d) In the case of de-silting of reservoirs, regarding applicability and procedures for Environment Clearance, Forest Clearance and Wildlife Clearance, activity listed at Sl. No.18, Table 2.2, can be referred in the “Operational Procedures for Assessing and Managing Environmental Impacts in Existing Dam Projects” CWC, November, 2020. This referred guideline has the competent level approval of MoEF&CC.
- e) NOC from State Pollution Control Board (SPCB)/Union Territory Pollution Control Committee (UTPCC) as well as concerned local authorities is required in advance for disposal site for disposal of dredged materials. Requirement of NOC from State/Union Territory Pollution Control Board and from local authorities for disposal of dredged material is exempted for dredging carried out for navigation purpose by Inland Waterways Authority of India.

6.0 EVALUATION OF SEDIMENT MANAGEMENT PROJECTS

Dredging/de-silting projects including all components and their techno-economic performances need to be evaluated. An ongoing monitoring program is essential for optimizing sediment management. Short and long-term monitoring plans should be developed as an integral aspect of the Sustainable Management Plan.

7.0 APPRAISAL OF THE PROPOSAL

- 7.1 Regarding Environmental Clearance of project other than de-silting of reservoirs, “Procedure for Environmental Clearance for Mining of Minor Mineral including Cluster”, as enumerated in appendix XI of MOEF&CC Gazette notification no. S.O. 141 (E) dated 15.01.2016 (as amended from time to time) may be followed; including the exemptions. The exemption given in Appendix XI of MOEF&CC Gazette notification regarding dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals will be applicable for purpose of annual/routine maintenance/upkeep and disaster management only.
- 7.2 There are instances of sediment removal from dams/rivers for different purposes and activities like for commercial purposes, restoration of storage capacity of reservoirs, channelization of rivers, etc. Such activities generally do not fall under regular maintenance/upkeep or disaster management and will be governed by this national framework for sediment management.
- 7.3 The detailed procedure for appraisal, environmental & other clearances and monitoring of the proposals of sand and gravel mining has been described in the “Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines, 2016” of MoEF&CC”.

Further, the detailed Guidelines for de-silting of reservoirs, its applicability and procedures for Environment Clearance, Forest Clearance, and Wildlife Clearance, activity listed at Sl. No.18, Table 2.2, in the “Operational Procedures for Assessing and Managing Environmental Impacts in Existing Dam Projects” CWC, November, 2020 may also be referred.

- 7.4 For de-silting/ dredging of sediment from rivers/ reservoirs; comprehensive DPR may be prepared by the State Authority/ Project authority/ PSU/private company etc. A Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) may be constituted by concerned State for appraisal and

approval of the DPR for the techno-economic viability. Concerned regional Chief Engineer of CWC or his representative should be included as one of members of the State TAC. Suggested composition of State TAC is enclosed at **Annexure-VI**.



ANNEXURE-I

ANNEXURE-I

SEDIMENTATION PROCESS IN RIVERS AND RESERVOIRS

All rivers and streams flowing in alluvial plains tend towards a stable flow condition maintaining a balance between the silt load carried, silt load deposited, and the resulting volume and velocities achieved. This is generally called a stable sediment regime for the river. When underlying parameters of volume and velocities are disturbed, either due to lower gradient (entering into plain reaches) or encroachment in flood plain, widening of the channel (braiding of river streams), suspended silt particles in the river water settle down, this is called siltation. This phenomenon is normally called sedimentation when it occurs in a reservoir.

Main factors responsible for the siltation / sedimentation are:

- (i) Physical and hydrological characters of the catchment, such as slope, geology and structures, land use, land cover, urbanisation, agricultural practices, deforestation and forest degradation etc.,
- (ii) Intensity of erosion in the catchment (sheet, rill, gully and stream channel erosion) including over-exploitation of minerals,
- (iii) Occurrence of landslides/landslips especially in hilly areas with heavy rainfall
- (iv) Construction of Roads, Houses etc. in the flood plain.
- (v) Quality, quantity and concentration of the sediment brought down by the river,
- (vi) Size, shape and length of the reservoir and operation strategies impacting trap efficiency of the reservoir,
- (vii) Some additional sources of silt generation are as follows:
 - a) In rural areas, the erosion source is typically soil degradation due to intensive or inadequate agricultural practice thereby resulting in an increased amount of silt and clay in the water bodies that drain the area.
 - b) In urban areas, the additional siltation sources are construction activities and seepage & sewage sludge discharged from household/business establishments with no septic tanks/wastewater treatment facilities.
 - c) In water, the main pollution source is sediment from dredging, and the deposited dredged material near water shore.

The detailed phenomena of sedimentation in rivers and reservoirs are explained as under:-

SEDIMENTATION IN RIVERS

Rivers are natural channels to drain water from highlands to lowlands/seas. Erosion and aggradations are the most important geological processes which have brought down large amounts of sediments from the higher elevations to the plains and have formed large fertile plains, which were adopted by the hominoid races for their development and sustenance. Big towns were located on the banks of rivers to

meet needs of water and navigation. These sediments are responsible for formation of delta of a river and providing sand to sea beaches. Further, flora and fauna (e.g. Mangrove forest) depend on water and sediment supply from rivers. Fishes and other aquatic organisms choose specific sediment types of river environments for feeding, breeding and spawning. Over time, the high lands of an area get worn down. The material thus eroded is utilized further downstream to build banks and flood plains.

Sediment carrying capacity of a river is directly proportional to the kinetic energy of water. With more kinetic energy water is capable of carrying larger amount of sediment and of bigger size. However, due to human interventions on rivers (e.g. Dams, bund, barrages etc.) natural regime of river is disturbed. Traditional flood plains remain no longer available for offloading the excess sediments and river is forced to deposit sediment in its channel or nearby. Further, as the river flows from high gradient to low gradient, momentum of the flow is reduced progressively by consumption of the kinetic energy in overcoming the flow resistance and consequently reducing its capacity to carry the sediments by tractive forces along the bed and suspension of coarser particles through turbulence, inducing thereby silt deposition en route. In the Indian context, which is essentially having monsoon type climate, there is huge variation of flows in different seasons.

Further, during floods also the rate of increase and decrease of flow is very high. As sediment carrying capacity of river is directly proportional to the quantity and velocity of water, during high flows considerable sediment is carried in the river which is deposited as the flow reduces. This rapid change of flows causes erosion and deposition at different places. This is also the main cause of change of cross-sections in alluvial rivers.

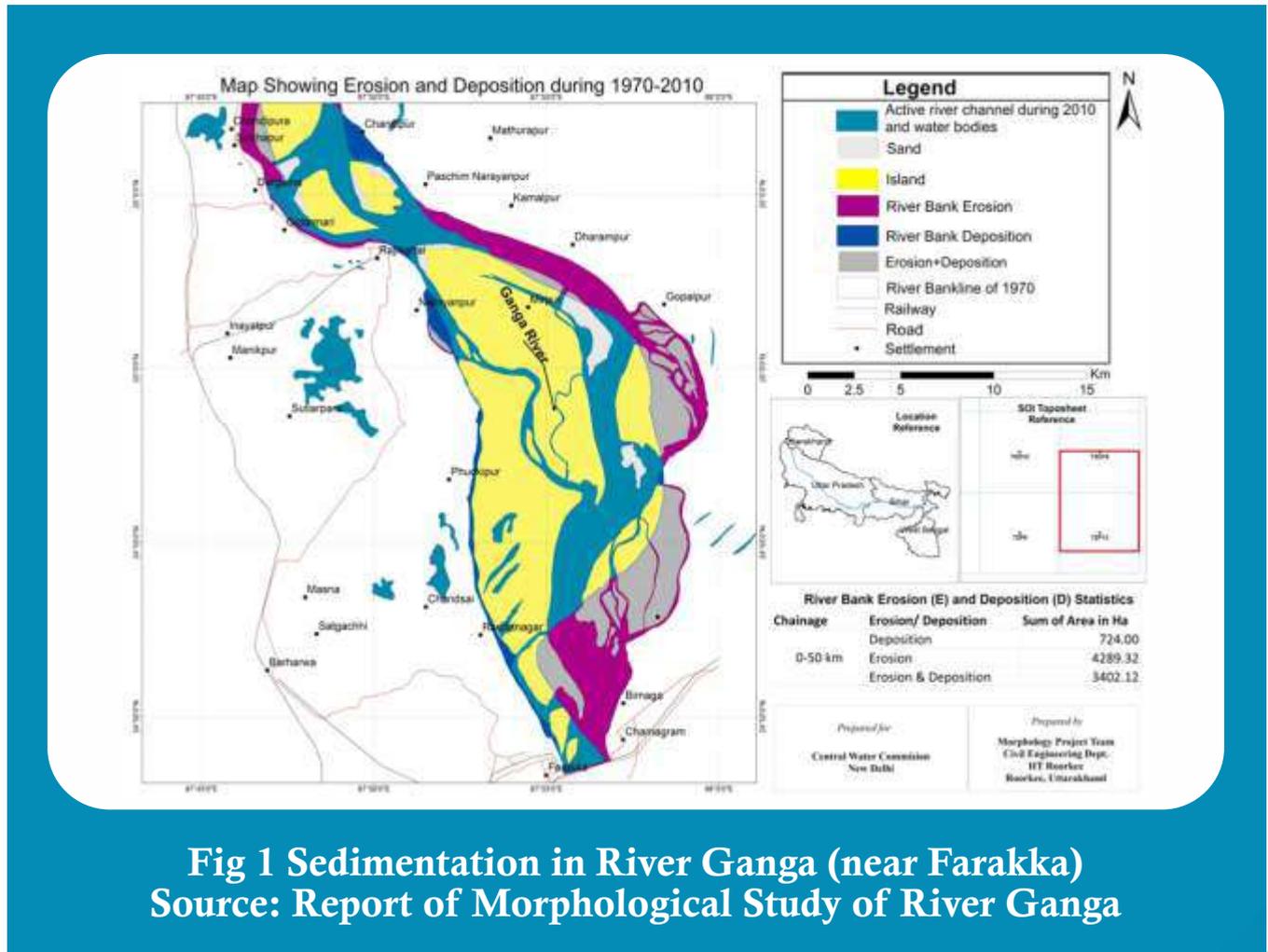


Fig 1 Sedimentation in River Ganga (near Farakka)
Source: Report of Morphological Study of River Ganga

SEDIMENTATION IN RESERVOIRS

Reservoirs are generally a part of the river system and quantity of sediment entering in the reservoir is dependent on the catchment area, type of soil, vegetation cover and gradient of river upstream of the reservoir. The river water entering the reservoir carries sediments which settle at various reaches in the reservoir. River systems erode material from the ground they flow over; these sediments are then transported downstream. When a river is dammed, the velocity of the water is slowed down and thus its ability to transport these sediments is reduced. When the velocity is too low the sediments in the river water will begin to settle down. The largest particle will settle first, near the upstream end of the reservoir, and often cause what is known as backwater delta. The finer suspended colloidal material (silts and clays) will settle down close to the dam where velocities are even lower. Some of the finer particles will remain in suspension and will flow through/over the outlet structures. The backwater delta will move forward towards the dam wall as time progresses. Depending on the shape, density, viscosity, size of the particle and flow, sediment settles in a reservoir in different patterns. The layer of water containing fine particles travel further down towards the dam as density current and may deposit there or near the rim of the reservoir. A major secondary effect is the downstream degradation of the river channel caused by the releases of clearer water. Siltation in rivers may or may not be accumulative; whereas sedimentation in reservoirs is generally accumulative.

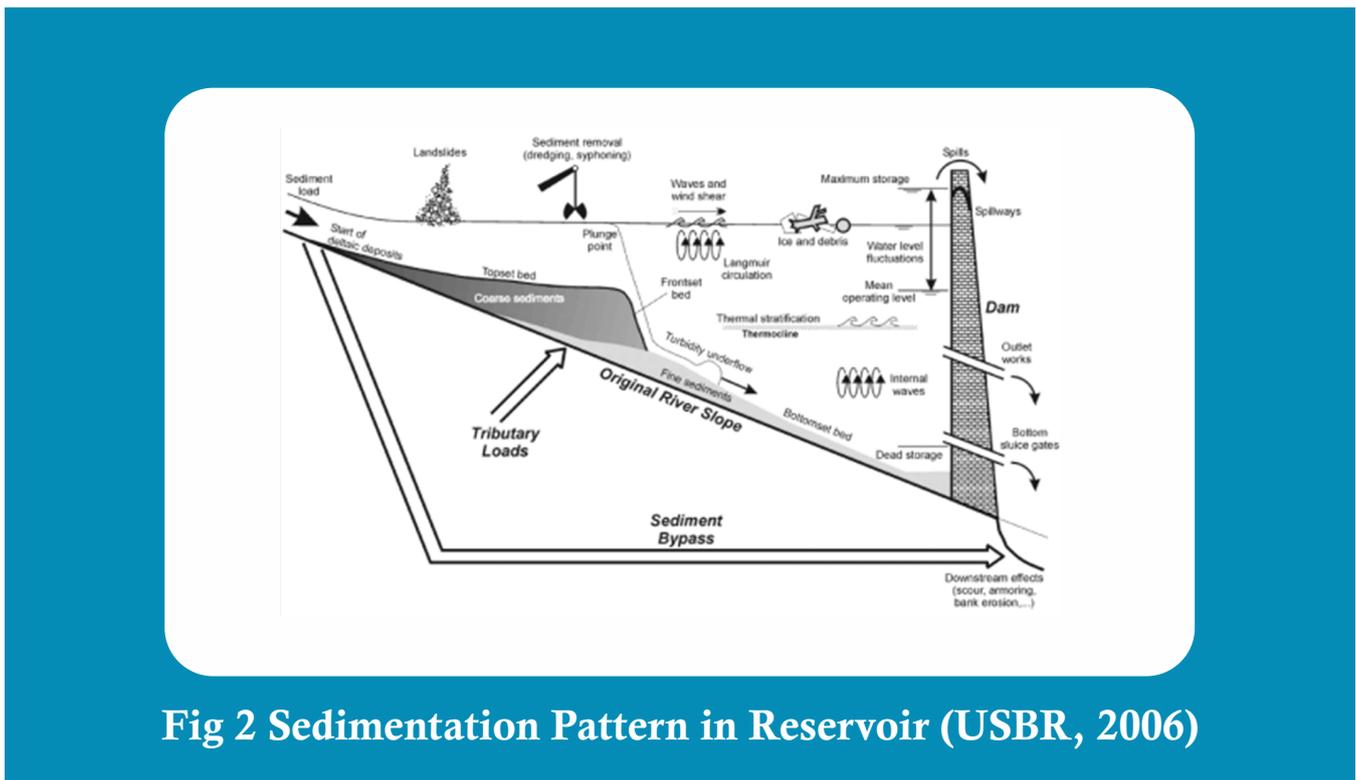


Fig 2 Sedimentation Pattern in Reservoir (USBR, 2006)

Sedimentation processes in a reservoir are quite complex because of the wide variation of the many influencing factors, the most important being, (1) hydrological fluctuations in water and sediment inflow, (2) sediment particle size variation, (3) reservoir operation fluctuations, and (4) physical controls or size and shape of the reservoir. Other factors that for some reservoirs may be quite important are: vegetative growth in upper reaches, turbulence and/or density currents, erosion of deposited sediments and/or shoreline deposits, and operation for sluicing of sediment through the dam.



ANNEXURE-II

ANNEXURE-II

APPROACH FOR SEDIMENT MANAGEMENT OF RIVERS

To reduce sediment production in the watershed sustainably, the main actions include (i) study watershed characteristics, (ii) assess the vulnerability of watershed in terms of soil erosion & sediment production using modelling and to identify & prioritise the degraded micro-watershed for treatment, (iii) treatment of the prioritised micro watersheds with biological and engineering erosion control measures, (iv) stream bank erosion control using river training works like spurs etc., and (v) trapping sediment upstream of reservoir (in river) .

Identification of hotspots may be carried out for prioritizing the action plans for Sediment Management thereby helping in targeted, cost-effective interventions. It is recommended to quantify the sediment load in order to identify effectiveness and type of interventions required.

A. Upper course- In this stage, the rivers have steep slopes and high sediment transport capacity. The following sediments management practices may be adopted-

- a. Catchment Area Treatment-** Catchment Area Treatment and Watershed Development works along with good agricultural practices and river bank protection/anti-erosion works are necessary to reduce silt inflow into the river system and must be undertaken in a comprehensive way. Catchment area treatment on watershed approach plays an important role in minimizing sedimentation. Watershed management programme needs to be integrated with river basin management programme appropriately. An effective and permanent method of sediment control is soil conservation in the catchment.

The method to be adopted in catchment may include-

- i. Afforestation and forest management
- ii. Regrading and grassland management
- iii. Cultivation practices, such as crop rotation, increasing organic matter, mulching, seasonal cover crops, contour cultivation, strip cropping and terracing.
- iv. Gully control and check dams- contour bunding and trenching.
- v. Appropriate land use controls for protecting areas of importance.
- vi. The various on-farm practices to control the soil detachment to reduce silt load may include the following practices:
 - To maintain grass cover on soil
 - To control sediment generation through film trap
- vii. Adoption of practice of bio-filter strips, field borders, sediment retention terraces and ponds

- b. **Regrading & Check dams-** Regrading of river bed slope and construction of check dams may be suitably adopted for management of degradation of river beds as per techno-economic feasibility.
- c. Controlled construction activities of roads and houses also reduce the silt intake in hilly areas.
- d. Occurrence of landslides / landslips especially in hilly areas with heavy rainfall need to be controlled by proper slope stability measures.
- e. **Storage Reservoirs-** The reservoirs are built to store water. Incidentally, these act as settling tanks for sediment and trap the sediment carried by the river. Therefore, the sediment concentration of the water released from the reservoir gets effectively reduced depending upon the size of the reservoir.
- f. River training works such as bank protection, spurs etc. should also be made for the vulnerable reaches to check the river bank erosion.
- g. **Boulder/Gravel/ Sand Mining-** In the upper course, boulder, gravels and sand (course & fine) are deposited in the river. If these are mined at this stage and used for construction purpose, then Boulder/ Gravel/sand mining can be done strictly as per following guidelines-

- I. “Sustainable Sand Mining Management Guidelines – 2016” of MoEF&CC
- ii. “Sand Mining Framework” released by Ministry of Mines in March, 2018
- iii. GSI Guidelines for riverbed gravel/ sand mining.

B. Middle course- In this stage, the river exits the hills, enters the plains, gets meandered mostly on bed of fine sand, has a wide river bed and flood plain. Most importantly, the river gets modified through human interventions in terms of huge quantities of water diversion/abstraction and subjected to high degree of pollutant loads from domestic, industrial and agricultural activities. In this stage, following sediments management practices may be adopted:-

- a. **River training works such as bank protection, spurs etc –** River training works are used to control the erosion of river banks. Erosion control of riverbank reduces the sediments intake in river
- b. **Submerged Vanes & Bandalling-** These methods may be adopted for management of localized aggradations within the river course as per techno-economic feasibility.
- c. **Sand Mining -** In this stage, sand is deposited in the river. If these are mined at this stage and used for construction or other purposes, then a major portion of sediment can be reduced. Sand mining can be done as per the guidelines mentioned above.
- d. **De-siltation/Dredging-** De-silting using sluicing and flushing near water resources infrastructure is very effective in increasing their serviceability. However, there exist some

locations such as congestion at the mouth of tidal rivers, confluence points and the likes which can be tackled by de-silting after thorough examination. For navigation purpose the river reaches in the waterway path can be dredged, to have minimum required draft for plying vessels. De-silting improves the hydraulic efficiency if done near outlets and intakes.

When the meander loop extends substantially in the lateral direction, the friction loss over the meander length generates a head loss thereby resulting in a rise in the flood levels. Over the course of time, when the water path around a meander lengthens, arising to a critical level, a natural cut-off takes place. Construction of artificial cut-offs (cunnette) can be utilized as a method for flood control.

It is necessary to appreciate that de-silting does not always lead to reduction of flood levels as the levels in the river are essentially controlled by the hydraulic conditions persisting at the cross sections forming upstream and downstream boundaries of the reach. The lowering of the bed level within the reach may not have influence on them consequently leading back to drainage problems within the season or within a few years. On the other hand, unsystematic dredging may have the effect on bank destabilisation.

- C. Lower course-** In this stage, the river experiences considerable changes in the sediment transport and deposition, causes wide spread flooding, undergoes frequent changes in the channel path/ delta formation.

The following sediments management practices may be adopted:-

- (a) **Desiltation/ Dredging-** In this stage, generally delta formation occurs due to heavy siltation, which leads to drainage congestion and the mouth of river gets choked. In these areas, dredging/ de-silting works may be undertaken to maintain flow continuity and ensure sediments transportation to sea.
- (b) **River training works wherever possible may be taken up for sediment management.**

General Guidelines for carrying out de-siltation/ dredging work

- (i) A study of the river reach may be selected for de-siltation/ dredging by appropriate mathematical and/ or physical model studies by employing consistent practices. Based on the outcome, the DPR may be prepared.
- (ii) Dredging for de-silting of Indian rivers may be adopted only in exceptional circumstances or when no other sustainable alternative is available. However, dredging for maintaining the necessary draft for maintaining the navigation may be done as and where required. However, it shall be ensured that such dredging does not cause any considerable pollution to river water and not harm flora and fauna.
- (iii) The de-silting of any river reach needs to be justified bringing out clearly the flooding caused due to siltation along with technical comparisons of the alternative flood mitigation measures with “do nothing” or “proposed de-silting/ dredging” being other options. It should invariably be associated with sediment flux studies and morphological studies to confirm no significant adverse effect on downstream or upstream reach of the river including the safety and effectiveness of river crossings, water intakes, existing river

bank / flood protection measures, etc. Post dredging, sediment flux studies should also be carried out to quantify the amount of silt likely to be deposited in future i.e. Sediment modelling studies for the river may be done before taking up any such project.

- (iv) Negative impact on ecology and environment due to de-silting may also be studied along with other studies and should be invariably made a part of DPR.
- (v) The quantity of sediments needed to be removed from rivers is usually very high. Since it may not be easy to find lands for silt disposal, therefore it should be ensured that all silt removed from river should be utilized in some works in association with concerned state government.
- (vi) The proposal for de-siltation/ dredging work should also contain environmentally acceptable, practically possible silt disposal/ utilisation plan. River gravels/sands/silts are valuable resource and could be used gainfully in construction works, including housing, roads, embankment and reclamation works. Since it is very difficult to find lands for silt disposal therefore it should be ensured that all silt removed from river is utilized in some works in association with concerned state governments. However, in the critical cases where it becomes necessary to remove the silt for free flow of water or protection of any installation, action may be taken up with the prior approval of the committee.
- (vii) Under no circumstances, disposal should create any contamination of water bodies, harmful to the flora and fauna existing adjacent to the disposal sites or disposed material should come back into the river again.
- (viii) Desilted material should not be used for filling up of wetlands and water bodies including oxbow lakes, as these are important for recharging the ground water and providing base flow in rivers during lean season.
- (ix) The modus operandi for sediment disposal should be finalized before carrying out dredging. No project should be executed before formulating a suitable and sustainable action plan for sediment disposal and be preceded by EIA Study, as per MoEF& CC notification dated 15.01.2016 to avoid damage to ecology. The methodology to be adopted (say use of dredgers etc.) should be clearly laid down in the proposal so that its co-relation with the environmental hazards can be made.
- (x) Normally, funds required for dredging projects are enormous. Before embarking on a major de-silting operation in any of the rivers, the financial implications may be discussed in detail.
- (xi) The dredging/de-siltation/mining activities thereby disturbing the river regime may result into some adverse impacts, i.e., (a) River bed degradation; (b) Bank erosion; (c) Channel widening; (d) Lowering of water surface elevations in the river channel; (e) Lowering of water table elevations adjacent to the river; (f) Reduction in the structural integrity of bridges, pipelines, jetties, barrages, weirs, foundations supporting high tension lines, existing bank protection works and other man-made structures; and (g) Loss of environmental values resulting from (a) through (e). Restrictions as presented in **Annexure III** need to be enforced

before planning and executing any dredging/ de-silting / mining activities. These restrictions may be modified only after proper study and monitoring the effects of dredging / de-silting / mining.

OTHER STRATEGIES

1. Silt management upstream of bridges, barrages & weirs

Shoal formation upstream of barrages/bridges in the pond area is a natural phenomenon. Reduced velocities of water in upstream of barrage leads to deposit of silt, but sometime after construction, this attains equilibrium and the incoming silt is washed away through the under sluices and during the flood season when all gates of the barrage are open.

- I. Upstream reaches of construction works, like barrages/bridges, etc., tend to get silted leading to wandering of river. As the waterway provided for design flood condition is much larger than actual waterway required in normal condition, there is a tendency for shoal formation upstream of barrages. Possibly, proper operation of gates verified on the basis of physical or mathematical modelling, river training, cut-off developments and provision of extra water way near the constrictions could be tried after proper assessment without impacting the morphology of river elsewhere. The area freed from the development in the form of oxbow lakes should be used for flood moderation rather than reclaiming it for other purposes.
- II. Sediment sluicing may be incorporated to maintain sediment continuity from upstream to downstream reaches after carrying out necessary studies.

2. Lateral Connectivity for Sediment Management- Construction of embankment has resulted in breaking the lateral connectivity of river with its flood plain. Therefore, the silt carried by the river is being deposited in river bed only leaving the flood plains devoid of sediments. This has resulted in rising of river bed and causing bank erosion at high flood levels. In order to provide lateral connectivity to the river with its flood plains, sluice gates may be provided at appropriate places in the embankment to allow controlled flooding in flood plains. This will allow silt carried by the river to be deposited in its flood plains in thin layers distributed over vast areas and will ultimately result in reduction of silt loads in rivers and will make the agriculture fields in flood plains fertile. This will benefit in multiple ways-

- (a) Reduced high flood levels in downstream.
- (b) Increased fertility of flood plains. Thus reducing the dependency of farmers on chemical fertilizers.
- (c) Recharge of ground water.
- (d) Rejuvenation of the water bodies etc.

Here, it may be mentioned that the sluice gates which allow incoming of flood waters in country side will be used for discharging extra water in river again when flood levels in rivers go down. Such sluice gates will also reduce drainage congestion on country side, if any.

3. Floodplain Management

River tends to achieve equilibrium on its own given the hydrology, sediment and natural bed and bank disposition. It is necessary to provide the river sufficient flood plain areas and lakes along the river to

moderate the flood level. Any encroachment of flood plain, reclamation of lakes or disconnection of lakes from river should be avoided. Rather, adjoining lakes/depressions may be de-silted to increase their storage capacities. The de-silting of lakes, etc., should be in such a manner that the sediment continuity is maintained and should not lead to head cut that creates safety issues for the river crossings, water intakes or river training works locally or upstream.

To maintain the hydrological and ecological balance, regulation of different activities in the river bed and different zones of flood plain is essential. The River Regulation Zoning for demarcating necessary zones should be implemented as early as possible. Central Water Commission in 1975 has already prepared a draft Flood Plain Zoning Bill in this regard.

4. Solid Waste Management

Solid waste from community including garbage, rubbish, agricultural waste, toxic Industrial discharge, construction debris, landfills in the catchment area etc. all contributes to pollution in rivers which damages highly sensitive and fragile river ecosystem. Such anthropogenic activities cause aggradations and morphological changes in the river. The disposal of solid waste needs to be controlled by the community, local municipal bodies and government bodies.

Special care should be taken for solid waste generated out of industrial processes. Many times, the same contains toxic materials and intermixing with other silt may render the same unusable for food chain use. Such waste should not be allowed to be dumped in the river.

5. River rejuvenation / Environmental flow

There is need to construct storages with sufficient flood cushion. The stored water needs to be released during the non-monsoon period in such a way that environmental flow and silt carrying capacity of river is by and large maintained. This will also improve the ecology of river. In this regard, DoWR, RD & GR, Ministry of Jal Shakti, GoI has issued guidelines on e-flow for river Ganga in 2018 vide notification dated 09.10.18

6. Bed-load management

Bed-load relocation (dredging) and artificial bed load supply, etc. Flood Control Programs-Detention basins (holding ponds), energy dissipaters in channels (culvert outlet controls, forced hydraulic jumps, drop structures, stilling wells, etc. Land use controls: these are used to reduce storm runoff), Embankments/dyke/levee construction, Periodic flushing of rivers, etc may be used to control the sediments.

7. Land Management and Soil Conservation Techniques

Check dams, settling basins, vegetation covers, agricultural practices, etc. may be adopted to control sedimentation.

8. Artificial Nourishment (with sediments) in the River

Due consideration has to be given for artificial nourishment (with sediment) in River stretches/ Reaches that contain inadequate quantity of bed sediments. This is very important to protect psammophilic/lithophilic organism that are inhibiting in river stretches devoid of adequate supply of sediments.

Further, artificial sediment nourishment is required, in certain cases, to contain the adversities of hungry water effect in river environment. This will also minimise the ill-effect on coastal and near shore environment as well.

9. Application of Multi-Temporal High-resolution Satellite Imagery

Multi-temporal high-resolution satellite imagery may be used for identification of hotspots (heavily sediment-laden stretches). However, there are some limitations for monitoring suspended sediment concentration using remote sensing such as availability of satellite data for the study period as sediment yield is time-dependent and simultaneous satellite imagery might not be available. Therefore, more research is necessary to harness the advancements in satellite remote sensing for studying the suspended sediment dynamics and sediment management in river stretches.

ANNEXURE-III



ANNEXURE-III

DREDGING/DE-SILTING/ MINING RESTRICTIONS

The dredging/ de-silting/ mining restrictions are intended to limit the adverse impacts associated with it. They are intended to limit those impacts to a level which will have limited and manageable minor effect on the morphology and ecology of the river. These are guiding principles and de-silting works should be done only and after detailed studies are undertaken. If the State Government/local bodies have any regulatory law in this regard, conservative restriction shall be followed. However, dredging by Government agencies like IWAI, PSUs etc. for maintaining the necessary draft for maintaining the navigation may be done as and where required.

1.0 Restriction on River Bed Degradation

The magnitude of dredging-induced river bed degradation is a key factor influencing the degree of instability of the river channel. This may result in secondary impacts such as bank erosion, channel widening, lowering of water surface elevations adjacent to the river, alteration of aquatic and terrestrial habitat, and a reduction in the structural integrity of man-made structures. Since secondary impacts increase as riverbed degradation increases, the degree of dredging/ de-silting/ mining induced river channel instability can be limited by identifying and selecting appropriate reaches for suitably controlling the amount of dredging related degradation. The dredging /de-silting / mining of the river reach shall be altered or terminated if the average river bed degradation over a 10 km reach length is more than 1 meter. A reach of river which has been dredged / de-silted /mined out and closed for further dredging will not be reopened until sufficient materials have accumulated to support renewed dredging activities for a reasonable period of time.

2.0 Restrictions Concerning Man-made Structures

2.1 Barrage or weirs or jetties

The barrages or weirs act as a river bed control structures across river and have huge influence on the river bed. If they fail, it could induce unintended severe riverbed degradation, bank erosion and channel widening due to design and other related issues. The unregulated dredging/ de-silting can result in Structural/functional failure of the structure in addition to the ill effects on river regime. To safeguard the structural integrity of the barrage or a weir, following restrictions shall apply:-

- a) Dredging/ de-silting/ mining activity upstream of structure will be allowed only beyond 200 m or $L/5$ whichever is more (Where L is the length of barrage/weir).
- b) Dredging/de-silting/ mining activities downstream of the structures will be allowed only beyond a distance of 800 m or L whichever is less (Where L is the length of barrage/weir).
- c) The region of extraction shall be decided in upstream so as to have a positive effect on hydraulics of the pond and channel.
- d) Maximum volume of extraction on downstream shall be decided by proper monitoring so that it will not have any effect on the integrity of the structure.

2.2 Water Intake Structures

No dredging below the natural bed level will be allowed within 150 m distance from the intake structures for safeguarding structural integrity. However, dredging can be carried out, if the water flow to the intake structures has been obstructed by excessive sedimentation. The dredging activity shall be restricted so that the water level reduction will not lead to functional difficulties in diverting water in to the intakes.

2.3 Bridges

No dredging will be allowed below the level of top of raft/bottom of pier within 150 m of any bridge crossing to safeguard the structural integrity of the bridge. This shall not be applied where water way has been obstructed by excessive sediment deposit and is causing flooding of upstream reaches.

2.4 Pipelines

2.4.1 Pipelines buried in the riverbed have a high potential to be adversely impacted by dredging activities. If degradation of the riverbed exposes pipelines, damage could occur through sagging, buoyancy or displacement of the line downstream due to an accumulation of debris. The following restrictions will limit the potential for dredging/ de-silting/ mining induced localized degradation to expose buried pipelines:

- a) No dredging will be allowed within 60 m of any pipelines that is buried 3 m or below the river bed.
- b) No dredging will be allowed within 150 m from any pipeline that is buried less than 3 m below the river bed. Additional restrictions may be required for any pipeline located on or above the river bed. Such restrictions could be developed on a case by case basis.

2.4.2 Laying of pipelines/telecommunication lines/internet cables etc. below the bed of any river should be done only after the approval of the concerned competent authority.

2.5 Bank Stabilization Structures

No dredging will be allowed within 60 m of the most upstream and downstream point of the bank stabilization structure. Dredging/ de-silting/ mining restrictions as shown in Figure 1 & 2 and the limit given in Guidelines/Notification 2020 of MoEF&CC shall apply for the bank stabilization structures. The same restrictions shall apply to levees or embankments also.

2.6 Other structures

The support structure for high tension lines passing over the river shall also be treated as bridge piers and relevant restrictions as provided in clause.2.3 for bridges shall apply. Restrictions regarding other man-made structures not identified in this section may be determined on a case to case basis.

3.0 Restrictions Concerning Natural Formations

3.1 Natural Rock or Hard Deposits in River Channel

Natural rock or hard deposits located on or in the riverbed may act as riverbed controls and/or may increase aquatic habitat diversity. The importance of rock or hard deposit is dependent upon extent of its area, its thickness and other relevant factors. Based on these hard deposits, river is restrained to flow along a predefined alignment. Dredging/ de-silting/ mining shall not dislodge such hard deposits or dredging of collected silt upstream or downstream of such hard stratum shall not in turn displace it, whereby the river loses its control. Therefore, restrictions concerning natural rock deposits will have to be dealt case by case basis. River Ganga flows along important ghats of Varanasi and other such places, where people gather in large numbers. It is held to flow along these ghats due to peculiar alignment formed by rock or hard strata and silt deposits together. Hence, dredging / de-silting / mining shall be avoided at these places entirely along the width and at least 5 km upstream and downstream of such congregational areas. However, for navigational purpose, limited dredging will be allowed in such shallow reaches as recommended in DPR.

3.2 River Banks

Dredging/ de-silting/ mining close to riverbanks have a high potential to adversely impact the stability of those banks, especially when dredging/ de-silting/ mining occurs near the outside of sharp river bends. Bank erosion induced by such dredging can result in the loss of land, damages to man-made structures, and adverse impact to environmental resources. Therefore, to limit the potential bed/bank degradation, restrictions as per notifications and guidelines being notified under Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 (latest Guidelines/Notification 2020 of MoEF&CC) shall apply on Dredging/ de-silting/ mining. The restrictions as shown in Figures 1 and 2 may be used as a guide as documented for river Ganga in the report of the Committee constituted for preparation of guidelines for works on de-siltation from Bhimgauda (Uttarakhand) to Farakka (West Bengal) prepared in 2017. Such restrictions for other rivers need to be derived by studies.

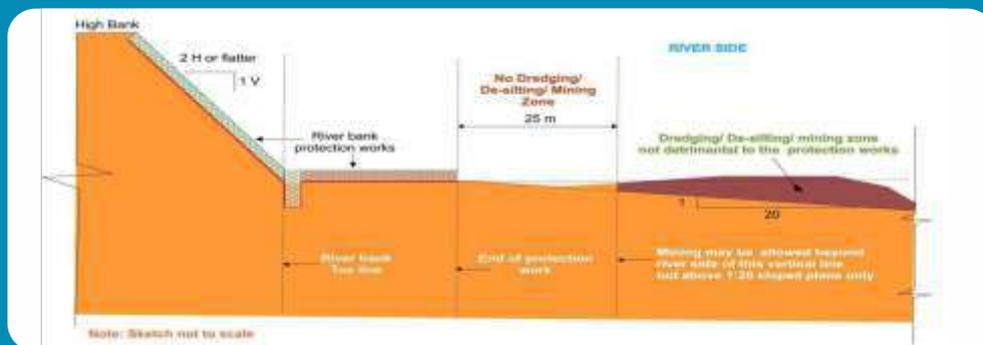


Figure 1: Typical Dredging / De-silting / Mining Restrictions for protecting river bank with bank protection works

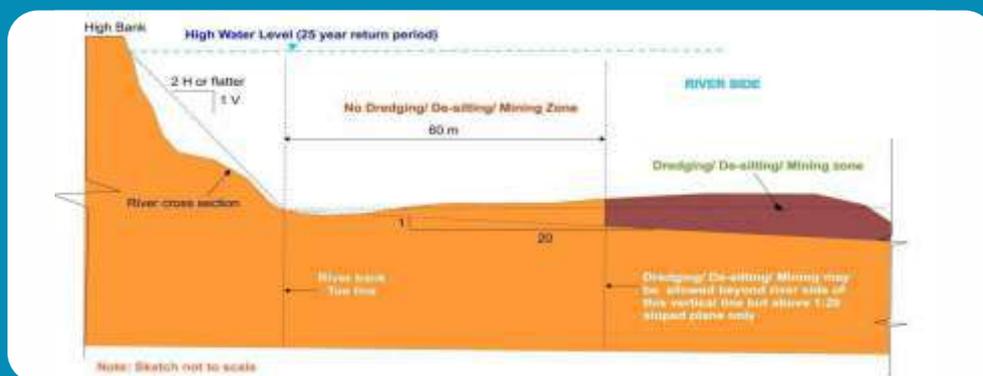


Figure 2: Typical Dredging / De-silting / Mining Restrictions for protecting natural river banks

ANNEXURE-IV

SEDIMENT-A RESOURCE

NATURAL FUNCTIONS OF SEDIMENT

The presence of the sediment in rivers is very important and equally beneficial. It is important because it often enriches the soil with nutrients. This deposited sediment on the banks and flood plains of a river which is highly mineral-rich makes excellent and the most fertile farmlands. This even reduces the need of fertilisers and pesticides to be used for cropping.

Areas rich in sediments are often also rich in biodiversity. They also provide the spawning bed for fishes. Further, deltas are the wetlands that form as rivers empty their water and sediment into oceans/seas. These deltas are important wetland habitats. Plants such as lilies and hibiscus grow in deltas, as well as herbs such as wort, which are used in traditional medicines. Many animals (Hilsa fish, crustaceans such as oysters, etc) are indigenous to the shallow, shifting waters of a delta. River sediment is an important source of beach nourishment. Sediment starvation may result in receding riparian zones and wetland.

BENEFICIAL USES OF SEDIMENT

Most dredged/removed/extracted material can be a valuable resource and should be considered for beneficial uses. Potential beneficial uses of dredged material should be thoroughly examined as part of pre-project planning studies. Preliminary surveys should be made during the reconnaissance phase of new studies and detailed aerial and ground surveillance should be conducted for feasibility studies. Modern tools such as remote sensing, visual data management systems and automatic data processing may be employed to help determine the most appropriate locations and best uses for dredged material.

Depending upon the geological formation a river passes through, the dredged material will vary in its composition. Therefore, the suitability of the dredged material has to be investigated/ assessed for its optimal application. Physical, engineering and chemical characteristics of dredged material proposed for beneficial use must be determined during the initial stages of planning. A number of standard soil properties are used to determine the physical and engineering characteristics of dredged material. Soil tests mainly would include grain-size analysis, Atterberg's Limits, bulk density, specific gravity and compaction characteristics. Engineering tests may mainly include shear strength, compressibility and permeability parameters. The chemical characteristics determination may include chemical constituents, cation exchange capacity, Nitrogen, Sulphur, Heavy metals, water quality considerations, concentration, organic content and contamination depending on the potential use.

The most common beneficial use of the dredged material is as a substrate for habitat development which refers to the establishment and management of relatively stable and biologically productive plant and animal habitats. This can range from wetland, upland, aquatic to island habitats. The river dredged material, if suitable can be used for construction, raising and strengthening of embankments, dykes, levees for bank protection works, raised platforms for flood proofing etc. This would serve the dual purpose of increasing the water flow area in the river as well as a resource material for use in river bank protection works.

Shore erosion is a major issue along the country's coastline and one of the most desirable, cost-effective shore protection alternatives is beach nourishment, which is usually accomplished by transporting sand/ sandy dredged material from inshore or offshore locations by truck, hopper dredge or hydraulic pipeline to an eroding beach.

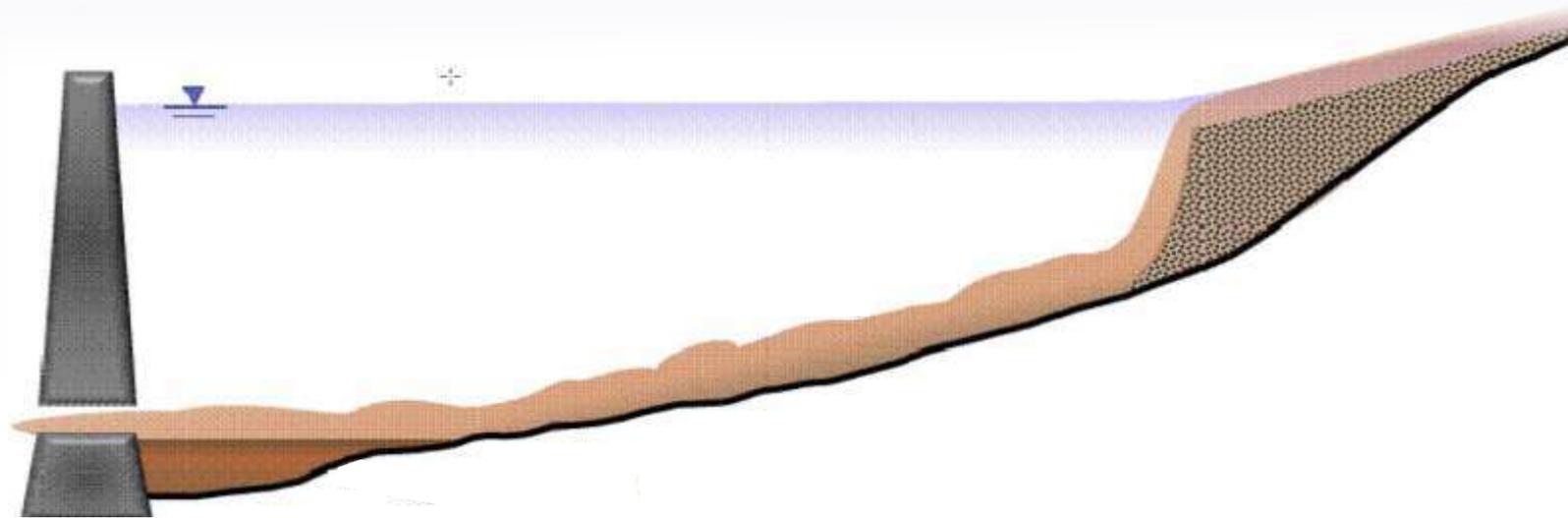
Other uses for dredged material include agriculture, forestry, horticulture, aquaculture industries, reclamation of abandoned strip mine sites, capping of solid waste landfills, protect landfills, manufacture bricks and hardened material that could be moderately contaminated and still be acceptable.

The dredged material is generally a good fill material for a variety of construction projects and serves as foundation material for road projects. Industrial/commercial development near waterways can be aided by the availability of hydraulic fill material from nearby dredging activities. The use of dredged material to expand or enhance river bank or port-related facilities has the potential benefits to the local economy.

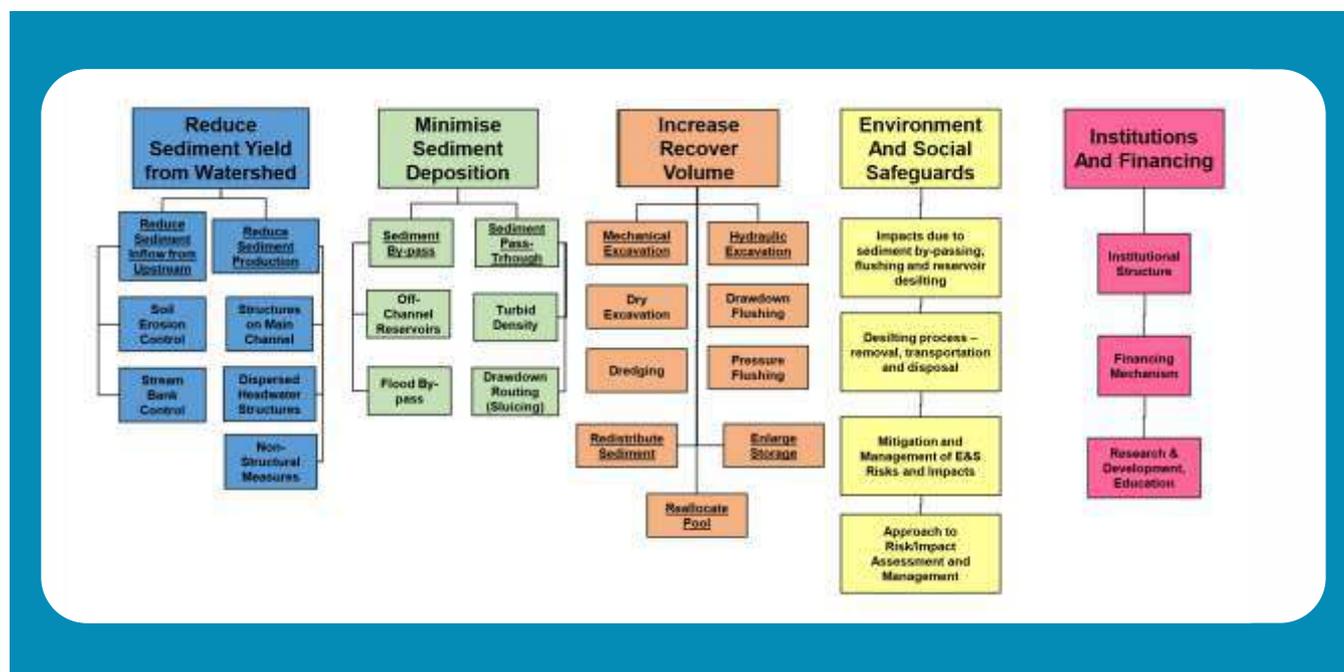
In spite of the sometimes poor foundation qualities, dredged material containment areas have become useful sites of high and low rise residential and business complexes. However, it is mandatory to ascertain the competency and suitability of the dredged material when it is proposed to be used in the foundation or as a construction material. Success has been attained where the properties of the dredged material have been properly accounted for in the residential design. A number of coastal areas have been built on dredged material foundations in areas where insufficient land was available for a commercial airport and use of dredged material was easily justified both economically and socially.

This page is left blank intentionally

ANNEXURE-V



MEASURES FOR SEDIMENT MANAGEMENT IN RESERVOIR



Measures to reduce sediment yield from watershed are common for rivers as well as reservoirs. The approach given under **Annexure-II** may be referred for further details.

The other strategies for sediment management in reservoirs are described hereunder:

A. Minimize Sediment Deposition

1.0 Sediment Bypass

It is a technique for reducing sediment inflow/deposition into reservoirs. This can be further sub divided into two categories:

1.1 Flood Bypass Channel or Tunnel

The purpose of a bypass is to divert sediment laden flood flows around a reservoir to downstream of the dam. By-passing a reservoir by making use of conveyance structures (tunnel or channel) is often only feasible when favorable hydrological, topographical and morphological conditions exist. The ideal geometry for sediment bypass is one where the river makes a sharp turn between the point of sediment collection and the point of sediment reintroduction to minimize the length of the conveyance device and take advantage of the relatively steeper gradient for gravity flow. Where that ideal condition does not exist, the technique is most practical where the reservoir is relatively short, as there must be sufficient gradient to drive the transport of sediment through the diversion tunnel or diversion channel. This measure has considerable financial implication in construction of diversion infrastructures, hence may not be preferable options for many reservoirs.

1.2 Off-stream reservoir

Off-channel/Off-stream storage reservoirs are built adjacent to the main river channel (e.g., a small tributary or on the flood plain). Water from the main river is diverted into the reservoir during times of low sediment concentrations. It is an alternate approach to sediment bypass tunnel, such that the diversions from the weir are clear-water diversions, while sediment-laden water is left in the river to pass downstream. Similar to sediment bypass, there needs to be sufficient gradient to drive flow through diversion channels or tunnels to the off-channel storage feature. One advantage of this approach is that all bed load entering into reservoirs can be excluded.

2.0 Sediment Pass-through

It is the technique for evacuation of sediments from reservoir. There are various methods for pass-through described here under:

2.1 Reservoir drawdown/slucing

Sluicing is an operational technique by which a substantial portion of the incoming sediment load is passed through the reservoir and dam before the sediment particles can settle, thereby reducing the trap efficiency of the reservoir. This is accomplished in most cases by operating the reservoir at a lower level during the flood season in order to maintain sufficient sediment transport capacity (turbulent and colloidal) through the reservoir. Higher flow velocities and higher sediment transport capacities in the water flowing through the reservoir result from operating the reservoir at these lower levels. The increased sediment transport capacity of the water flowing through the reservoir reduces the volume of sediment that is deposited. After the flood season, the pool level in the reservoir is raised to store relatively clear water. Effectiveness of sluicing operations depends mainly on the availability of excess runoff, on the grain size of the sediments and on reservoir morphology. One advantage of this approach is that deposition in the reservoir is minimized and the sediment continues to be transported downstream during the flood season when sediment is naturally discharged by the river. Finer sediments are more effectively transported through the reservoir than coarse sediments. A drawdown and sluicing strategy may be employed at reservoirs of all sizes, but the duration of sluicing depends on the watershed size and the time scale of flood events.

2.2 Vent turbid density currents

In some instances sediments can flow into a reservoir as a density current. This phenomenon can occur when the sediment concentration in the inflow is much higher than the water in the impoundment and/or there is a significant temperature difference between the incoming flow and the impounded water. Under such circumstances the density current may flow under the impounded water in the reservoir toward the dam. If the density current is not allowed to flow through the dam by means of low-level gates, a technique known as density current venting, it will curl up at the dam and its return-flow will mix with the clearer water in the reservoir. The sediment thus mixed into the clearer water will deposit with time. Most dams have been designed with a dead storage capacity below which there are no outlets and therefore the water in this zone cannot be used. Many designers incorrectly assumed that sediments would naturally deposit in this dead storage.

B. Increase/Recover Volume

1.0. Mechanical Excavation

1.1. Dry Excavation

By dry excavation, sediment which is temporarily above water is removed from the reservoir bed. At the upper delta area of the reservoir with coarse sediment deposits from flood events, the reservoir bed can be dried out and excavated by lowering the reservoir level, for instance on a seasonal basis if water level variations over the seasons are predictable. Earth-moving equipment such as bulldozers, scrapers, excavators and trucks are used. Dry excavation in the delta may be done in combination with installing a sediment check dam at the upstream end of the reservoir and mechanically removing sediment captured in the check dam.

By completely emptying the reservoir of water, access is allowed to dry excavation of the finer sediment in the lower part of the reservoir. Dry excavation in this part will in general be more challenging due to the finer material which tends to have higher water content if unconsolidated, and considerable time may be required for the sediment to dewater and consolidate. Furthermore, the access road by truck along the reservoir bed to transport the excavated sediment away may be difficult to establish. Costs of emptying the reservoir should also consider the lost benefits of power production, flood control, water supply for irrigation etc.

Coarse sediment at the upper delta consisting of sand and gravel, usually represent a higher commercial value than fine silty or clayish material from the lower part of the estuary. Such added benefits of reusable sediment which could be transported directly to the buyer of such sediment, should be considered.

The feasibility of mechanical excavation as compared to alternatives also depends on the volume of material involved to be transported from the reservoir by truck and the difficulty of obtaining suitable sites for placement of the excavated material within an economic distance with least environmental and social impact.

As dry excavation with complete emptied reservoir is performed by shutting down the dam for one year or more, it will be a larger investment in terms of lost benefits, and the interval in between such operations should be a specified number of years to be determined by careful sedimentation analyses. In case of cascade of reservoirs, the lost benefits may be alleviated by de-silting reservoirs in rotation.

1.2. Dredging

By dredging, sediment is removed from the reservoir bed from beneath the water. Mechanical excavators mounted on barges represent one option whereas hydraulic dredging with use of slurry pipelines by which a mix of sediment and water is pumped onshore is another option. Mechanical excavators are most efficient with coarse and/or well consolidated sediment in shallow areas. While excavating and lifting sediment from the bottom to the water surface, spill may occur, and the softer/finer material, the more spill.

Hydraulic dredging is a common solution to sediment removal in the deeper part of the reservoir. Transport and disposal of sediment are key factors to consider. One option is to

discharge the dredged material downstream of the dam in a way, so that the downstream river has capacity for this extra sediment load. In such case, hydrosuction dredging or siphon dredging utilising the gravity of force can be considered to reduce pump energy requirements. Another option is to pump the slurry to nearby containment areas, from where the water can be drained, and the dredged material can settle and consolidate for either permanent disposal or transport by other means (trucks) to other disposal sites.

Important considerations for accessing the feasibility are the cost and efficiency of the dredging equipment itself, power supply, the dredging operation including synchronisation with the river flow, natural as well as released flow downstream, the transport and disposal of the slurry and/or excavated sediment, the sediment spilling including adverse effects this may have on the environmental conditions within the reservoir. Transport of heavy dredging equipment, spare parts, fuel etc. to and from the reservoir site is another consideration.

Pump energy, abrasion of equipment, and availability of nearby containment areas (including the river downstream) are main factors which determine the feasibility of dredging. Considering that sedimentation is of increasing concern in many countries, substantial product development goes on and many new technologies such as submersible dredge pumps emerge. Thus, awareness of the newest solutions within dredging is important to identify the best technical solutions.

Every dam site has its own constraints and opportunities when it comes to de-silting and solutions may be very different for e.g. small irrigation dams and for large hydro-power reservoirs

2.0. Hydraulic Excavation

2.1. Draw-down Flushing

Flushing is a technique whereby the flow velocities in a reservoir are increased to such an extent that deposited sediments are re-mobilized and transported through low-level outlets in the dam. For flushing to be successful, in general the ratio of reservoir storage to mean annual flow should not exceed 4%, because with larger storage the reservoir cannot be easily drawn down. Also flushing flows need to pass through the low-level outlet without appreciable backwater; it may not be feasible to use large floods which exceed low-level gate capacity as flushing event.

Two approaches to flushing exist: complete draw-down flushing and partial draw-down flushing. Complete draw-down flushing reservoir is emptied during the flood season), resulting in the creation of river-like flow conditions in the reservoir. Partial draw-down flushing occurs when the reservoir level is drawn down only partially. In this case the sediment transport capacity in the reservoir increases, but usually only enough to allow sediment within the reservoir to be re-located, i.e., sediment is moved from upstream locations in the reservoir basin to locations further downstream and closer to the dam.

2.2. Flushing Sediment for Dams in Series

In flushing sediment through a series of dams, simultaneous flushing can be accomplished by releasing the flushing pulse first from the upstream reservoir. Just before that pulse reaches the next downstream reservoir, its lower level gates are also opened to pass the sediment. After finishing the

sediment flush, the reservoirs are refilled and clear water released from upper level gates to flush the downstream channel of deposited sediment. The basic sequence of operations is to draw down the reservoir water level, maintaining a free-flow state over several hours (the duration being determined by the amount of sediment to be flushed), and then allowing the reservoir water level to recover.

2.3. Pressure flushing

This technique is a variant of draw-down flushing, rather than drawing the reservoir down so that it is acting like a river in carrying its sediment load, pressure flushing works only to remove sediment directly upstream of the dam to keep intakes operational. The reservoir level is not lowered, but outlets are opened to remove sediments a short distance upstream of the outlet, creating a cone-shaped area of scour just upstream of the outlet, the scour hole being created in a fraction of the time it would take to refill. However, the scale of sediment removal by this technique is much smaller than with draw-down flushing. Rather, pressure flushing serves to reduce sediment concentrations to the intake and thereby reduce abrasion of hydraulic structures by sediment. To maintain or restore reservoir capacity, pressure flushing is not an effective technique.

3.0. Adaptive Strategies

As an alternative to actively handling sediment, the lifetime of reservoirs may be prolonged through other approaches. This must be considered in the feasibility studies of de-silting. A non-exhaustive list of options is described below.

3.1. Reconfigure Reservoir Layout

Other than from siltation over the last decades of an ageing reservoir, the hydrological design basis may have altered (e.g. different hydrograph inflow due to climate change, upstream watershed characteristics etc.), and the water resource demands downstream may also have changed considerably.

With new design criteria, consideration of new benefits and new costs (including environmental and social safeguarding costs), definition of minimum requirements, a redesign of the existing reservoir may therefore be considered. With relevant modifications, a conversion of the current layout of the reservoir into a different reservoir (although located at the same place) may be investigated.

Reconfiguration could be by dividing the existing pool into two or more interlinked pools, some possibly off-channel. Pools could serve different purposes (flood control, water supply for irrigation and other, hydro-power, fishery, tourism etc). Each pool will have better steering of sediment processes such as siltation of fine sediment in some pools and coarse sediment in other (upstream) pools. Efficient sediment handling strategies will be devised for each. The overall storage capacity will most likely be less (as existing siltation is still there), but the remaining capacity is better utilised.

A reconfiguration of the reservoir layout and utilisation will be an attempt to convert the design into a life cycle management mode instead of the original finite lifetime mode. Re-establishing a natural long-term balance of sediment considering the need for natural sediment transport processes in the downstream river should be part of this approach.

3.2. **Modify Reservoir Structures**

The lifetime of the reservoir may be extended by few passive modifications of the structures in the reservoir or addition of new structures.

Check dams upstream of the reservoir will arrest coarse sediment, which can subsequently be dry excavated. Other guiding structures could be built in parts of the reservoir (or sub-pools) to manipulate the flow pattern and thereby the sediment transport and siltation pattern. Submerged guiding walls could steer the near-bed sediment processes like fluid mud. The elevation of outlets could be increased. Sediment screens could protect inlets. Eddy formations in front of penstocks which cause high suspended sediment concentrations could be arrested by structural measures to reduce coarser abrasive sediment that reaches turbines. Protective coatings of gates, pipelines, and other equipment exposed to scour or abrasion by sediment.

The crest of the dam may be elevated to increase the storage volume, and the elevation of the spillway can be increased and thereby modifying the overall rules of reservoir operation. This will, however, not address the overall siltation issue, but simply extend the lifetime of the reservoir.

3.3. **Improve Operational Efficiency**

The efficiency of the storage capacity allocated for different purposes must be considered as an alternative to increase the storage volume. The feasibility of such solutions may be many times more beneficial but may involve participation of other stakeholders also. Examples are provided in the following.

Flood control is usually based on decades-old operating rules. With modern technology and use of low-cost internet-of-things sensor technologies, real-time hydrological data can be collected, processed and used as the backbone of dynamic rule-curves.

The same real-time data technology is applicable for hydro-power production, which may also take other parameters into account in a dynamic multi-criteria optimisation using real-time data of grid demands, electricity spot pricing forecasts, as well as conjunctive use of stored water for multiple purposes (power production during flood prone season, or crop-growth season etc.).

The loss of water in irrigation canal systems (transmission losses), as well as the field efficiency in the command area (equal distribution between fields, use of drip and sprinkler irrigation etc.), and the crop efficiency of water use (crop-per-drop) can in most cases be substantially improved. Examples of water loss of 50-80% are not uncommon in irrigation systems and should be considered as options alongside with desilting reservoirs. Other water-intensive activities drawing water from the reservoir may also be optimised.

4.0. **Mechanical Removal of Silt**

During low season (low flow conditions) when the reservoir is dry or marginally filled, silt may be removed from the live storage area and transported to a desired safe location. Though Environmental impact during dry excavation is generally not very high, as dry earth is being removed, it should not contribute to sediment runoff during subsequent rainy/flood conditions. This dumping place should be selected in such a way that neither it becomes a cause of sedimentation of the same reservoir from which the sediment is removed nor cause of deposition in subsequent reservoirs. Further, the temporary approach roads laid for truck movements for silt

removal shall be cleared off on completion of the work as it may affect the flow path of water into the reservoir later.

5.0. Handling of Removed Sediment

Disposal or use of sediment which is removed from the reservoir is a major consideration which must be investigated thoroughly as part of the feasibility analysis. The characteristics of the sediment: Quantity as well as Quality, must be clarified as part of the long-term sediment monitoring programme as well as additional sediment analysis in connection with de-silting projects. The quality of sediment is related to its physical properties (grain size, density, load-bearing capacity, cohesiveness etc.) as well as chemical and biological properties (toxicity, nutrient contents, metal contents, organic contents, sediment oxygen demand etc.) and determines its environmental impact and potential utilisation. Different options for handling the sediment must be considered for planning de-siltation actions. The available strategies are Disposal of Sediment below Dam, Transport and Disposal Off-channel, filling up old abandoned mineral mines to reduce land subsidence, Redistribute sediment within reservoir, utilisation as resource, etc.

ANNEXURE-VI

ANNEXURE-VI

**Suggestive composition of State Technical
Advisory Committee (TAC) for Techno-economic
Appraisal of Sediment Management Schemes**

S No	Committee Composition	
1	Principal Secretary(Irrigation/Flood Control/ water Resources)	Chairman
2	Representative of State Finance Department	Member
3	Chief Engineer of CWC of concerned basin	Member
4	Representative from State Environment & Forest Department	Member
5	Member (Technical). Inland Waterways Authority of India and Development Advisor (Ports) MoPSW.	Member
6	Representative from Dept of Mining	Member
7	Representative from District Administration of concerned area	Member
8	Engineer- in-Chief (Flood control/ Water Resources/ Navigation/ Irrigation)	Member
9	Representative from Ministry of Earth Sciences	Member
10	Representative from Building Construction Dept/ Road Construction Dept	Member
11	Regional Officer, MoRTH/NHAI/NHIDCL	Member
12	Member from Downstream State (in case of Inter State implication)	Member
13	Chief Engineer/General Manager (Dam Owner/ Project Authority)	Member Secretary

Terms of Reference (ToR) of the Committee:

1. The Committee shall examine the proposal in detail from Technical, Environmental and Financial and social aspects including BC ratio.
2. Committee shall examine details critically and ensure that the proposed works are not repetitive in nature.
3. Source of funding of scheme may be mentioned.
4. Committee shall check the DPR prepared as per guidelines and having all relevant information.
5. Committee may co-opt any member as Special Invitee.
6. Committee shall ensure that works are not broken in pieces to reduce the level of approval.

This page is left blank intentionally

This page is left blank intentionally



सत्यमेव जयते

**Government of India
Ministry of Jal Shakti
Department of Water Resources,
River Development
and Ganga Rejuvenation**

National Framework for Sediment Management

F. No. 3-70/2020-IA.III [141127]
 Government of India
 Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
 (IA Division)

Indira Paryavaran Bhawan
 Jor Bagh Road, Aliganj,
 New Delhi - 110003

Dated: 21st August, 2023

OFFICE MEMORANDUM

Subject: Monitoring and enforcement mechanism for the Standard Operating Procedure (SoP)/environmental safeguards issued for (i) Extraction or sourcing or borrowing of ordinary earth for the linear projects such as roads, pipelines, etc. and (ii) dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, rivers and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management - reg.

The Ministry vide Notification S.O. 1224 (E) dated 28/03/2020 had *inter-alia* provided exemption from prior Environmental Clearance for extraction or sourcing or borrowing of ordinary earth for the linear projects such as roads, pipelines, etc., and dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, rivers and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management.

2. Subsequently, in pursuance to the order dated 28/10/2020 of Hon'ble National Green Tribunal, Principal Bench in Original Application No. 190/2020 in the matter of Noble M. Paikada Vs. Union of India & Ors, the MoEF&CC issued Office Memoranda of even number dated 8/8/2022 and 12/07/2023 respectively regarding the Standard Operating Procedure (SoP)/environmental safeguards to be followed for the entries 6 and 7, as mentioned below, under the Appendix IX of the EIA Notification, 2006 which have been exempted from the requirement of obtaining environment clearance vide Notification dated 28/03/2020 :

6. *Extraction or sourcing or borrowing of ordinary earth for the linear projects such as roads, pipelines, etc.*
7. *Dredging and de-silting of dams, reservoirs, weirs, barrages, river and canals for the purpose of their maintenance, upkeep and disaster management.*

3. The Ministry deems it necessary to ensure that aforementioned SoP/environmental safeguards are implemented in letter and spirit at the field level, for which a monitoring and enforcement mechanism needs to be put in place.

4. In this regard, it is enjoined upon all the Project Proponents availing of the aforesaid provisions and carrying out activities related to entries 6 and 7 of Appendix IX of the EIA Notification, 2006 to inform the concerned State Pollution Control Board(SPCBs) /Pollution Control Committees(PCCs) at least a fortnight before start of such activities in writing giving details of such activities and the environment safeguards being observed by them as laid out in the applicable SOP referred to in the para number 2 above.

5. All the State Pollution Control Board(SPCBs) /Pollution Control Committees(PCCs) shall independently monitor the compliance status of the aforementioned SoP/environmental safeguards as the case may be. All the State Pollution Control Board(SPCBs) /Pollution Control Committees(PCCs) shall also monitor the aforementioned SoP/environmental safeguards while monitoring the compliances of the CTE (Consent to Establish) and CTO (Consent to Operate) conditions. Further, the SPCBs/PCCs shall initiate legal action against the project proponent under the relevant provisions of Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 for the projects not complying with the aforesaid SoP/environmental safeguards, as may be applicable.

6. This is issued with the approval of the Competent Authority.


(Sundar Ramanathan)
Scientist 'E'

To

1. Chairman, Central Pollution Control Board (CPCB)
2. Chairman and Member Secretaries of SEIAA/ SEACs
3. Chairpersons/Member Secretaries of all SPCBs/UTPCCs
4. All the Officers of I.A. Division

Copy for information to:

1. PS to Hon'ble Minister for Environment, Forest and Climate Change
2. PS to Hon'ble MoS (EF&CC)
3. PPS to Secretary (EF&CC)
4. PPS to DGF&SS (EF&CC)
5. PPS to AS(TK)/PPS to JS (SKB)
6. Website, MoEF&CC/Guard file